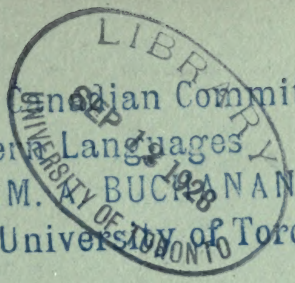
GERMAN COMPOSITION

PAUL R. POPE

Property of Canadian Committee
on Modern Languages
c/o M. BUCHANAN,
University of Toronto



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2007 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation

http://www.archive.org/details/germancompositio00popeuoft

LaG.Gr.
P826 4g

GERMAN COMPOSITION

WITH NOTES AND VOCABULARIES

TORONTO LIBRARY
UNIVERSITY

BY

PAUL R. POPE, PH.D.

ASSISTANT PROFESSOR OF GERMAN IN CORNELL UNIVERSITY

SECOND EDITION, REVISED

225600
27.9.25

NEW YORK

HENRY HOLT AND COMPANY

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

Copyright, 1908,

by

HENRY HOLT AND COMPANY

CAMELOT PRESS, 18-20 OAK STREET, NEW YORK

PREFACE.

THE text presented here is intended for students who have already been introduced to the elements of German. The writer has endeavored to make the book thoroughly German in spirit. While he has sought to present an idiomatic English text, his chief attention has been given to furnishing one which could readily be translated into idiomatic German.

In the first selections of Parts I and II, parallel German and English texts are given. The student should, of course, make himself thoroughly familiar with the German before translating the English text based upon it, and should, in this translation, use the general English-German vocabulary at the end of the book as little as possible.

Questions covering the lessons in Part I, but intended to be suggestive rather than exhaustive, have been prepared, and it is hoped that the teacher will find the material offered in this book especially fitted for systematic work in conversation.

The foot-notes are intended to be complete in the first selections of the book. In later selections the student is expected to have become less dependent upon such help and to use correctly the material presented in the vocabulary.

The Grammatical Notes are not intended to be exhaustive, but merely to explain concisely the points which arise in con-

nection with the material of the text. For points not covered in these Notes, any of the standard reference grammars may be consulted. The student is advised to look over the first sections on Capitals and Punctuation before beginning the actual work of composition.

Although the three parts of the book can be used independently of each other, the writer advises that even more advanced classes begin with Part I rather than with Part II or Part III. Such classes can cover more ground at a lesson and can do more work in conversation. Then Part II may be omitted and Part III taken up as a continuation of Part I. For some classes it may be advisable to omit the Letters in Part I until the narrative selections of Part II have been translated.

In general the aim has been to arrange the material in the order of difficulty. Certain selections, in themselves more difficult than those following upon them, will be found to offer less trouble on account of the parallel German text. In other cases, longer lessons of easier matter following upon shorter intrinsically more difficult lessons have been introduced by way of variety.

The writer is directly or indirectly indebted for many suggestions to a number of books upon German Composition already published, and gladly acknowledges this indebtedness to the various authors. He is especially indebted to his friends, Dr. A. W. Boesche of Harvard University, Professor Lane Cooper of Cornell University, Dr. Fritz Pauls of the Oberrealschule auf der Uhlenhorst in Hamburg, and to his wife, formerly Professor Elfrieda Hochbaum of Wells College, for

their faithful reading of manuscript and proof and for the many helpful suggestions which they have given him.

The writer will esteem it a great favor, if teachers who may discover any errors or omissions will communicate them to him immediately.

PAUL R. POPE.

CORNELL UNIVERSITY, January, 1908.

CONTENTS.

PART FIRST.

A. Eine Reiſe nach Deutſchland. A Trip to Germany.

		PAGE
1.	Die Abreiſe	2
	The Departure	3
2.	Nach New York	4
	To New York	5
3.	An Bord	4
	On Board	5
4.	Das Wetter	6
	The Weather	7
5.	Warum die See ſalzig iſt	8
	Why the Sea is Salt	9
6.	Der ſchlaue Reiſende	10
	The Clever Traveler	11
7.	Rätſel	12
	Riddles	13
8.	Im Hafen von Plymouth	14
	In Plymouth Harbor	15
9.	Ein Brief	16
	A Letter	17
10.	Die Ankunft	18
	The Arrival	19
11.	Die deutſchen Eiſenbahnen	20
	The German Railways	21
12.	Die deutſchen Eiſenbahnen (Schluß)	22
	The German Railways (concluded)	23

PAGE

13. Das Hotel 24
The Hotel 25
14. Das Restaurant 26
The Restaurant 27
15. Ein Spaziergang durch die Stadt 28
A Walk through the City 29
16. Der Besuch 30
The Visit 31
17. Der Besuch (Schluß) 34
The Visit (concluded) 35
18. Erichs Brief 36
Erich's Letter 37
19. Erich's Letter (continued) 38
20. Erich's Letter (concluded) 39
21. The Day's Program 40
22. The Day's Program (concluded) 41
23. Christmas at the Wienholds'. 42

B. Briefe. Letters.

I. An Verwandte und Freunde 46
To Relatives and Friends 47
II. An ferner Stehende 48
To more distant Acquaintances 49
III. Geschäftsbriefe 52
Business Letters 53
IV. Anzeigen 54
Advertisements 55

PART SECOND.

Märchen und Sagen.
Tales and Legends.

A. Tiergeſchichten.
Animal Stories.

PAGE

1. Einleitung 58
   Introduction 59
2. Reynard and Bruin 60
3. Reynard and Bruin (concluded) 61
4. Reynard and Isegrim 62
5. Reynard as Judge 63
6. Reynard as Judge (concluded) 64

B. Die Zwerge.
The Dwarfs.

1. Einleitung 66
   Introduction 67
2. Introduction (concluded) 68
3. The Goblins 69
4. The Dwarf Laurin and the Rose-Garden . . . 71

C. Heldenſagen.
Heroic Legends.

1. Lohengrin 73
2. Hildebrand and Hadubrand 75

D. Paraphrases of Poems.

1. Die Weiber von Winsperg 78
   The Women of Winsperg 79

PART THIRD.

Deutſches Leben und deutſche Sitten. German Life and Customs.

A. The German Empire.

PAGE

Map of the German Empire 82
1. Boundaries, Rivers and Mountains 83
2. States and Cities 85
3. Germany's Place among the Nations 86

B. Pictures of German Life.

1. A German City in the Year 1300 88
2. A Modern German City 90

C. German Student Life.

1. The German Gymnasium 92
2. The German University 95
3. The Last Day at the Gymnasium 97
4. My First Room 100
5. Rushing the Freshman 102
6. The First Lecture 105
7. An Excursion to Weimar 106

GRAMMATICAL NOTES.

Capitals 111
Division into Syllables 111
Punctuation 111
The Articles 112
Nouns 113
Pronouns 113
Cases 114
Verbs 115
Word-Order 119
Words Likely to cause Confusion 127

GERMAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY 131
ENGLISH-GERMAN VOCABULARY 154
LIST OF STRONG AND IRREGULAR VERBS . . 202

Erſter Teil — Part First.

[A.] Eine Reiſe nach Deutſchland.
A Trip to Germany.

Eine Reise nach Deutschland.

1. Die Abreise.

Das vorige Jahr verbrachte mein Freund Karl in Deutschland. Sein Lehrer hatte ihn eines Tages gefragt, warum er nicht nach Deutschland gehe, da er dort viel mehr Deutsch als zu Hause hören könne. Zu gleicher Zeit könne er auch sehr viel sehen und lernen.

Also entschloß er sich die Reise zu machen. Seine Eltern billigten den Plan, aber sagten, daß ein Freund ihn begleiten müsse. Bald fand er einen Schulfreund, namens Erich, der mit wollte, und eines Abends im Juni verließen sie ihre Vaterstadt und fuhren mit der Eisenbahn nach New York, um von dieser Stadt nach Hamburg zu fahren.

Den letzten Tag in ihrer Heimatstadt waren die beiden Freunde sehr beschäftigt, da sie viele Besuche machen mußten und auch viel mit dem Gepäck zu tun hatten. Als sie endlich auf den Bahnhof kamen, fanden sie dort viele Bekannte, die gekommen waren, um ihnen glückliche Reise zu wünschen. Das freute sie, denn es waren alte Freunde, die mit ihnen auf derselben Schule Deutsch getrieben hatten.

---

1. 1. Wo war Karl voriges Jahr? 2. Warum ging er nach Deutschland? 3. Durfte Karl allein reisen? 4. Wer wollte mit? 5. In welchem Monat reisten sie? 6. Wie kamen sie nach New York? 7. Nach welcher Stadt in Deutschland wollten sie fahren? 8. Von welcher Stadt in Amerika fuhren sie nach Deutschland?

9. Warum waren die Freunde am letzten Tage so beschäftigt? 10. Wen fanden sie auf dem Bahnhofe? 11. Warum waren die Bekannten gekommen? 12. Wo hatten die Freunde sie kennen gelernt?

A Trip to Germany.

1. The Departure.

I spent last year in Germany. One day [1] my German [2] teacher had [3] asked [4] me: "Mr. Braun, why don't you go [5] to Germany? You can hear [6] much more German there than at home. At the same time you can see [6] and learn [6] very much."

So I decided [3] to leave my native city in‿order‿to‿take [7] the trip to Germany. My father and mother approved of the plan. "But someone must accompany you," they said.[3] One evening [1] in [8] June my friend Erich said,[3] "Karl, I will [go] [9] along." That pleased me greatly, for we had [10] been [4] in the same school and had [10] studied [4] German together. We wished to go [11] from New York to Hamburg, but first we had‿to [12] go [11] to New York by rail.

On the last day we were‿very‿much‿occupied [13] with our baggage. We also had many calls to make and were very busy the whole day.[14] Finally we came to [15] the station and there we found [3] many acquaintances. They had come (in order) [16] to wish [17] us a pleasant [18] journey.

1. [1] Gen., 20. (These numbers and letters refer to sections and paragraphs in the Grammatical Notes, p. 111). [2] 3 b. [3] Inv. order; 35 a. [4] Part. comes last in clause, 37. [5] Why go you not, 23. [6] Inf. comes last, 37. [7] um ... zu machen; when words are connected by the sign (‿), the foot-note refers to the whole expression thus marked, or the expression is to be rendered by a single word in German. [8] im (= in dem) 11 a. [9] Words in square brackets not to be translated; 31 b. [10] Norm. order, 35 a, Note 1. [11] fahren, 37, Note. [12] pret. of müssen. [13] Imitate German model. [14] were the whole day very busy, 43 a, 22 a. [15] auf with acc. [16] Words in parenthesis to be translated; cf. Note 7. [17] 37, Note. [18] happy.

2. Nach New York.

Es war schon spät geworden, und die beiden Freunde hatten eben Zeit genug ihre Fahrkarten zu lösen und das Gepäck aufzugeben. Sie mußten einfache Fahrkarten nehmen, da die Rückfahrkarten nur dreißig Tage gültig waren, wie ihnen der Beamte sagte. Jetzt rollte der Zug in den Bahnhof, ein langer, prächtiger Zug mit großer Lokomotive, vielen Schlafwagen und einem Speisewagen. Er hielt nicht lange an, und die beiden Freunde mußten schnell adieu sagen und einsteigen. Dann läutete und pfiff es, und der Zug fuhr ab.

Mit diesem Zuge brauchte man nicht umzusteigen; also gingen die Reisenden gleich zu Bett, schliefen bald ein und wachten erst in New York auf, wo sie natürlich aussteigen mußten. Der Bahnhof war nur ein paar Straßen von dem Landungsplatz entfernt; also gingen Karl und Erich in aller Eile dahin, denn sie waren beide sehr neugierig den großen Dampfer zu sehen, der sie über die See bringen sollte.

3. An Bord.

Eine große Menge füllte den Landungsplatz, so daß die Reisenden sich kaum durch den Wirrwarr durchdrängen konnten. Endlich standen sie vor dem Schiff. Wie imponierend war

---

2. 1. Was machten die Freunde auf dem Bahnhof? 2. Warum nahmen sie einfache Fahrkarten? 3. Wie lange wollten sie in Deutschland bleiben? 4. Beschreiben Sie den Zug! 5. Warum mußten die Freunde schnell einsteigen? 6. Was geschah dann?

7. Was machten die Freunde im Zuge? 8. Wo wachten sie auf? 9. Warum fuhren sie nicht weiter? 10. Wo gingen sie hin, nachdem sie ausgestiegen waren? 11. Warum gingen sie dahin? 12. Wie weit war es vom Bahnhof bis zum Landungsplatz?

3. 1. Warum konnten die Freunde nicht leicht an das Schiff kommen? 2. Beschreiben Sie das Schiff!

2. To New York.

"We must buy[1] our tickets immediately," I told[2] Erich, "for we still[3] have our baggage to check and to say good-bye." "Can we get return-tickets?" I asked the agent. "Yes," he replied, "but they are good[4] [for] only thirty days.[5]" So we had to[6] take the single-trip-tickets.

The train had arrived in the meantime. There were[7] six sleeping-cars and a dining-car besides the large locomotive. It had already grown late, so we boarded[8] a sleeping-car in order to go to bed immediately. The fine train did[9] not stop long. Soon the bell rang and the whistle blew, and our friends had just time enough to wish us a pleasant journey when[10] the train pulled out.

Since[11] we did not need to change cars the whole night,[12] we went to sleep immediately and did not awake until[13] [we were] in New York. Of course we had to[6] leave the train there. We could see the wharf from the station, for it was only a few blocks[14] away. There lay the great steamer which was to[15] take[16] us across the sea. We were both curious to see it,[17] and so we went there in great haste.

3. On Board.

What[1] confusion we found[2] there! We could hardly press through the crowd. But before we went[3] to the ship, we inquired[4] in the baggage-room about[5] our trunks

---

2. [1] 37 Note. [2] inv. order, 35 a. [3] 43 b. [4] comes last, 45. [5] acc., 22 a. [6] pret. of müſſen. [7] Es waren. [8] ein-ſteigen . . . . in (with acc.). [9] stopped not long, 23. [10] wenn or als? 49 d. [11] Da, 49 f; trans. order, 36 a. [12] comes immediately after we, 43 a. [13] not . . . until = erſt. [14] acc., 22 b. [15] pret. of ſollen; trans. order, 36 b. [16] bringen. [17] masc., 16.

3. [1] Acc. of welcher. [2] 35 e or 36 c. [3] trans. order, 36. a. [4] inv. order. 35 a. [5] wegen.

der Anblick! Wie mächtig war das Schiff; wie groß und hoch!

Während Erich das Schiff betrachtete, ging Karl zum Gepäckraum, um nachzufragen, ob ihre Koffer angekommen seien, und ob noch etwas zu besorgen sei. Da alles in Ordnung war, kehrte er zu Erich zurück, und dann gingen die beiden an Bord.

Jetzt besichtigten sie das Schiff von einem Ende bis zum andern, guckten unterwegs neugierig in die schönen Kajüten und die prachtvollen Salons und bewunderten die hohen Masten und den mächtigen Schornstein. Es war ihnen alles höchst interessant, denn sie machten ja ihre erste Seereise. Dann kam ein langes, dumpfes Tuten, das Abschiedssignal. Alles lief auf das Promenadendeck hinauf, um besser zu sehen; Taue wurden eingezogen, eine ganze Schar von kleinen Schleppdampfern zogen an, so stark sie konnten, und das große Schiff kam langsam in Bewegung. Die Musik spielte, Taschentücher flatterten, ein lautes Hurra erscholl von dem Landungsplatz, und das Schiff wandte sich majestätisch dem Ozean zu.

4. Das Wetter.

An diesem prächtigen Junimorgen war das Wetter wunderschön. Keine Wolke stand am klaren blauen Himmel, die Sonne schien so warm und freundlich, daß man sich nicht denken konnte, es könne je wieder Sturm geben. Von Osten her wehte ein sanfter Wind, der gerade stark genug war, um die

3. Was erfuhr Karl im Gepäckraum? 4. Wo gingen die Freunde jetzt hin? 5. Was sahen sie auf dem Schiff? 6. Hatten sie je zuvor eine Seereise gemacht? 7. Was hörten sie nun? 8. Warum gingen sie auf das Promenadendeck? 9. Beschreiben Sie die Abfahrt!

4. 1. Beschreiben Sie das Wetter an diesem Junimorgen! 2. Wie stark war der Wind? 3. Wo kam er her?

and found that everything was[3] in order. The trunks had come and nothing more was to be attended to.[6]

Then we went to the ship. We had never seen such a large and mighty [one].[7] The sight impressed us greatly. Now we went on board, peeped into our fine cabin and the splendid saloons, then went on deck[8] and walked from one end to the other in order to look at the masts and the smoke-stack. Of course we found everything very interesting, for this was our first ocean trip.

After[9] we had admired the ship sufficiently we heard[4] the signal for departure, a long, dull whistle. Everybody wished to see how the ropes were[10] hauled in and how sturdily the crowd of little tugs pulled away. One could see that best[11] from the promenade-deck. Then we heard the music and saw the handkerchiefs waving.[12] Slowly and majestically the great ship came[4] into motion and turned toward[13] the ocean. Then a last mighty hurrah resounded[4] from the wharf and our fatherland lay behind us.

4. The Weather.

As we were looking at[1] the clear blue sky out of which[2] the sun shone so warmly and cheerfully, the second officer came to us. "Very fine weather to-day, isn't it[3]?" he said. "Yes," I replied, "it is a splendid morning; I can't imagine[4] that there ever was[5] [a] storm. There[6] isn't

---

[6] act. inf., **29**. [7] a so large and mighty (adj. inflected strong). [8] auf Deck. [9] **49 h**; trans. order, **36 a**. [10] trans. order, **36** and **38**. [11] am beſten. [12] inf., **32 e**. [13] reflexive.

4. [1] looked at, **23**; trans. order, **36 a**. [2] out of which ... shone, von dem ... herniederſcheinen, trans. order, **36 b**. [3] nicht wahr? [4] ich kann mir nicht denken. [5] use „es gibt" in perf. tense. [6] Follow German model.

Luft kühl und angenehm zu machen. Die Passagiere sahen alle recht heiter aus und freuten sich über den Sonnenschein. Der Kapitän jedoch und seine Offiziere auf der Kommandobrücke schienen nicht so zufrieden zu sein. Sie warfen ab und zu Blicke auf das Barometer und auf den Himmel, an dem sich nun auch kleine Wölkchen zeigten. Nur der zweite Offizier blieb vorläufig unter den Passagieren und sprach eine Zeit lang mit den beiden Freunden, bevor er sich auch auf die Brücke begab.

Inzwischen war es immer dunkler geworden; bald hatte sich der Himmel ganz bedeckt, und um eins fing es schon an zu regnen. Jetzt heulte der Wind durch das Takelwerk, die See war auch nicht mehr so glatt, sondern ging ziemlich hoch, und das Schiff schaukelte schon ein wenig. Einige Damen waren ganz blaß geworden, vielleicht vor Angst. Es war nicht mehr angenehm auf Deck, und alle Passagiere flüchteten sich vor dem Sturm in die Kajüten. Da machten sie es sich bequem und erzählten einander allerlei Geschichten.

5. Warum die See salzig ist.

Als die beiden Freunde in den großen Salon eintraten, war der Schiffsarzt im Begriff, einigen Passagieren zu erzählen, warum die See salzig ist. „Es ist eine uralte Geschichte," sagte er, „und findet sich in einer alten skandinavischen Sage; die lautet folgendermaßen:

---

4. Wie sahen die Passagiere aus? 5. Wie die Offiziere? 6. Warum warfen diese Blicke auf das Barometer? 7. Wie wurde das Wetter jetzt? 8. Wie die See? 9. Warum wurden die Damen blaß? 10. Wo gingen die Passagiere jetzt hin? 11. Was taten sie in den Kajüten?

5. 1. Wen fanden Karl und Erich im großen Salon? 2. Welche Geschichte erzählte der Schiffsarzt? 3. War dies eine neue Geschichte?

a[6] cloud in the[7] sky, and the wind which comes from the east is making[8] the air cool and pleasant." "Yes," said the officer, "but just[9] see[10] the captain on the bridge. He does not look[8] so cheerful as the passengers and does not seem[8] to be satisfied with the weather. You see, he is occasionally casting[8] glances at[11] the barometer."

While we spoke, the sky began to be overcast.[12] First came little clouds. Then it grew darker and darker.[13] "It will rain soon, after all,[14]" said Erich. "I think we shall not have a[3] very pleasant night," said the officer. Then he left us and went upon the bridge. "Just[9] hear,[15] Erich, how the wind is howling through the rigging," I said. "Yes, and the sea is no longer so smooth, it is already somewhat rough," he replied. "Do you[15] notice how the boat is rolling?" "And just see those ladies over there. Do you notice how pale they have become?[16]" "Doubtless from[17] anxiety," I replied; but that was not the reason. Now it began to rain, and we took refuge from[17] the storm in the cabin.[18] There we found many passengers who had made themselves comfortable and who were telling each other[19] all kinds of stories.

5. Why the Sea is Salt.

There the ship's doctor was standing among some passengers who had also just[1] stepped into the large saloon. He seemed to be on the point of telling[2] a story, so we remained[3] in order to hear it.[4] Soon we learned why

[6] kein, 49 a. [7] am. [8] 23. [9] mal or nur; immediately after imperative. [10] inv. order, 35 d. [11] auf. [12] ſich bedecken. [13] always darker. [14] doch bald regnen. [15] Use sing. forms of verb and pron. in conversation between the friends. [16] trans. order, 36 a. [17] vor. [18] acc. [19] einander or ſich.

5. [1] eben. [2] im Begriff ... zu erzählen. [3] inv. order, 35 a. [4] fem., 16.

Es war einmal ein mächtiger König in Norwegen, der hieß Frodi und besaß zwei Mühlsteine. Das waren gar seltsame Mühlsteine, denn sie konnten alles mahlen, was der Müller sich nur wünschen mochte. So mußten sie Geld, Soldaten, Schiffe und vielerlei andere Dinge mahlen, welche der König brauchte.

Da wurde Frodi aber plötzlich von einem Seeräuber angegriffen und getötet, ehe er sich der Mühle bedienen konnte, um sich zu retten. Der Seeräuber aber brachte die Mühle auf sein Schiff und befahl den Steinen Salz zu mahlen. Da fing die Mühle an zu mahlen, hörte aber nicht wieder auf, so daß das Schiff bald unter dem Gewicht des Salzes in die See sank. Auch dann fuhr die Mühle fort zu mahlen und soll sogar bis auf den heutigen Tag Salz mahlen. Und deshalb ist die See salzig."

6. Der schlaue Reisende.

Es wurden jetzt andere Geschichten erzählt, wovon die meisten von Reiseerlebnissen handelten. Ein älterer, ziemlich dicker Herr gab die folgende Geschichte zum besten.

„Ein Reisender kam eines Abends ganz durchnäßt in ein Gasthaus. Er hätte gern einen Platz am warmen Ofen gehabt, um sich zu wärmen und seine Kleider zu trocknen; doch

---

4. Wo lebte Frodi? 5. Warum waren die Mühlsteine so seltsam? 6. Wer drehte die Mühle? 7. Was mahlte sie?

8. Was passierte dem Frodi? 9. Was machte der Seeräuber mit der Mühle? 10. Was mußte sie jetzt mahlen? 11. Warum sank das Schiff in die See? 12. Hat die Mühle aufgehört zu mahlen? 13. Erzählen Sie diese Geschichte!

6. 1. Wovon handelten die meisten Geschichten? 2. Wer erzählte diese Geschichte? 3. Wer kam in das Gasthaus? 4. Warum wollte er am Ofen sitzen?

the sea is[5] salt. The doctor began: "I will tell you an extremely old story which is found[6] in a Scandinavian legend, and which runs as follows:

"There was once a king in Norway named Frodi.[7] He was very mighty, for he possessed[8] a very peculiar mill which could grind everything that[9] the miller wished. Thus the king needed only to command and the mill straightway[10] ground money, ships, soldiers and many other kinds of[11] things. One day a pirate attacked Frodi and killed him. He had come[12] so suddenly that the king had no time to use his mill and save himself. The mill was brought[12] by the pirate into[13] his ship, and there he commanded it[14] to grind salt. The mill began to grind immediately and soon the ship was full [of] salt.[15] 'Stop!' cried the pirate then, but the mill did not cease to grind. It continued to grind after the ship had sunk into the sea, and the stones are said[16] to be turning[17] even to the present day."

6. The Shrewd Traveler.

Now an elderly, somewhat stout gentleman began to tell various incidents of travel and soon favored us with[1] the following story which he had read somewhere.

"One evening a traveler came into an inn. He was quite wet through, but hoped to dry his clothing and warm himself by the stove. All the chairs were occu-

---

[5] trans. order. [6] use reflex. verb, 24 b. [7] namens Frodi or Frodi genannt. [8] norm. order, 35 a, Note 1. [9] was, 19 b, Note. [10] 43 b. [11] vielerlei andere. [12] 37. [13] auf. [14] dat. fem., 16. [15] 13, Note 2. [16] ſollen. [17] ſich drehen.

6. [1] zum beſten geben.

alle Plätze waren von anderen Reisenden besetzt. Um seinen Zweck doch zu erreichen, sprach er zu dem Wirt: ‚Bringen Sie meinem Pferde ein Dutzend Austern!‘ Erstaunt blickte dieser ihn an, bis der Reisende sein sonderbares Verlangen wiederholte. Der Wirt entfernte sich endlich und tat, was der Reisende verlangt hatte; aber auch die Gäste verließen nach und nach das Zimmer, um zu sehen, ob das Pferd die Austern wirklich fressen würde. Das aber hatte der schlaue Reisende nur gewollt. Er suchte sich nun den besten Platz am Ofen aus und machte es sich bequem. Bald kamen auch die neugierigen Gäste wieder herein und merkten schon an dem verschmitzten Gesichte des Reisenden, was er mit seinem sonderbaren Verlangen beabsichtigt hatte. Endlich erschien auch der Wirt und erklärte, das Pferd wolle die Austern nicht fressen. ‚So?‘ erwiderte der Reisende mit lächelnder Miene, ‚dann muß ich sie wohl selber essen.‘“

7. Rätsel.

Nachdem der dicke Herr seine Geschichte beendet hatte, rief er Karl zu: „Nun, junger Mann, will ich Ihnen ein Rätsel aufgeben. In einem Zimmer sitzt in jeder Ecke eine Katze. Auf jedem Katzenschwanz sitzt eine Katze, und jeder Katze sitzt eine Katze gegenüber. Wie viele Katzen sind im Zimmer?“ Ohne sich lange zu besinnen, sagte Karl: „Natürlich zwölf Katzen.“ Da er aber gleich merkte, wie der Herr schelmisch lächelte, über-

5. Was sagte er zum Wirt? 6. Ging dieser gleich? 7. Warum nicht? 8. Warum folgten die Gäste dem Wirt? 9. Was machte der schlaue Reisende jetzt? 10. Was sagte der Wirt, als er zurückkam? 11. Was erwiderte der Reisende? 12. Was hatte er mit seinem sonderbaren Verlangen beabsichtigt?

7. 1. Wann erzählte der Herr sein Rätsel? 2. Wie viele Ecken hat ein Zimmer? 3. Warum antwortete Karl zuerst: „Zwölf Katzen“?

pied, however.[2] When the inn-keeper came up to him,[3] the traveler asked[4] him to take a dozen oysters out to his horse. The other guests looked at him in astonishment,[5] and he had to repeat his peculiar demand before the inn-keeper finally went away. But now the inquisitive guests wished to see a horse which ate[6] oysters, and left the room one after the other. Thus the shrewd traveler had attained his purpose. After he had picked out the best place and made himself comfortable, the guests began to return. The inn-keeper appeared soon after[7] and said to[8] the shrewd traveler: "Sir, your horse will not eat the oysters." "Is that possible?" answered the traveler, laughing;[9] "he probably[10] thought that I wished to eat[11] them myself." But as[12] he remained calmly sitting[13] there by the stove with smiling mien and a sly face, the guests perceived[14] why he had[15] first sent the oysters to his horse.

7. Riddles.

After the stout gentleman had stopped telling[1] stories, Erich and I went to him and begged him to give us a few riddles. He said that he knew only one and that this [one] was[2] not especially good. "In a room in my house," he said, "four cats are sitting in the four corners of the room. Moreover, a cat is sitting on the tail of each cat,[3] and opposite each cat sits a cat. Can you guess how many cats I have in the room?" If the gentleman had not smiled[4] as he spoke, I should have answered,[4]

---

[2] 7. [3] auf ihn zukommen. [4] bitten. [5] astonished. [6] fressen (of animals). [7] darauf. [8] use zu, 21 b. [9] 32 a. [10] wohl. [11] essen (of persons). [12] 49 e. [13] 32 e. [14] inv. order, 35 a. [15] 36 a.

7. [1] zu erzählen, 32 e. [2] subj. pres., 30 a. [3] follow Germ. model [4] subj. pluperf., 30 b 2.

legte er sich schnell das Rätsel und antwortete diesmal ganz richtig: „Vier." „Gut," sagte der Herr, „und jetzt habe ich eine grammatische Frage an Ihren Freund. Sagt man auf Deutsch: 5 und 7 ist 13, oder 5 und 7 macht 13?" „Ich würde sagen: 5 plus 7 macht 12," antwortete Erich und freute sich, daß er nicht hereingefallen war.

8. Im Hafen von Plymouth.

Eine Woche später lag der Dampfer im Hafen von Plymouth vor Anker. Er war sehr früh angekommen, vor Sonnenaufgang sogar. Diesen Morgen stand Karl auch früh auf und ging auf Deck, um etwas frische Luft zu atmen. Wie erstaunt war er in der Nähe des Schiffes Land zu sehen, hier hohe Hügel und in der Ferne eine Stadt. Er lief schnell hinunter, um Erich zu wecken. „Wach auf, du Faulpelz!" rief er, „ganz England liegt vor uns. Mache nur schnell!" Erich zog sich schnell an, und beide liefen die Treppe hinauf, um wieder einmal Land zu sehen.

Links ragte das steile Ufer hoch aus dem Wasser empor. Wie freute man sich, das grüne Gras, das viele Gebüsch und die kleinen Wälder zu erblicken. Auch waren Gebäude zu sehen, unter anderen auch einige Forts. Rechts vom Dampfer kreuzten auf offener See ein paar englische Kriegsschiffe. Sie

4. Warum sagte er nachher, „Vier"? 5. Warum sagt man nicht: „5 und 7 macht 13"?

6. Wie viel macht 12 plus 13? 28 minus 14? 6 mal 5? 48 (dividiert) durch 12? 7. Zählen Sie von 1 bis 25! 8. Erzählen Sie ein Rätsel!

8. 1. Wo ist der Dampfer jetzt? 2. Wie lange war man auf offener See? 3. Wann ist Karl aufgestanden? 4. Was sah er, als er auf Deck kam? 5. Was sagte er, als er Erich weckte? 6. Was ist ein Faulpelz? 7. Was sah man am Lande? 8. Was auf offener See?

"Twelve," but I bethought myself and answered quickly and correctly, "Four."

The gentleman said that I had guessed[5] it, and now turned to Erich to put a grammatical question to him. He asked Erich if it were[2] more correct to say in German that 7 and 6 *is*[2] 12 or that 7 and 6 *are*[2] 12. Erich, who was already acquainted with this joke, answered that he would rather say[6] that 7 and 6 are *13*. "Very good," said the gentleman, laughing[7] heartily. "I am glad that neither[8] of you was caught."

8. In Plymouth Harbor.

One morning I rose very early, even before sunrise, (in order) to breathe some fresh air. As I came on deck, I was much astonished to see land quite near the ship. I could hardly believe that we were in Plymouth already, although it was a whole week after that stormy afternoon. "Erich must come up too," I thought, so I ran down to wake him. "Wake up,[1] you lazy-bones!" I cried; "don't you know that all England lies before us?" So he had to dress[2] and then we ran quickly up-stairs.

How beautiful the land looked![3] On the left, high, steep hills rose up from the water. In the distance lay a city. We could see green grass and bushes on the shore. Here and there a little forest was to be seen.[4] On the hills we could see some peculiar buildings that looked like forts. On [the] open sea to the right we saw several English battleships cruising.[5] One could distin-

[5] subj. pluperf., 30 a, Note 1. [6] pres. cond., 30 b 1 and Note 1. [7] 32 a. [8] keiner.

8. [1] inf. or past. part., 28. [2] reflexive. [3] 35 e or 36 c. [4] 29. [5] inf., 32 e.

sahen recht gefährlich aus mit ihren großen Kanonen, welche man durch das Fernrohr gut sehen konnte.

Jetzt kam der kleine Dampfer von der Stadt, um die Passagiere zu holen, welche hier ans Land wollten. Man konnte auch Briefe mitschicken; also nahm Karl die Gelegenheit wahr, Nachricht an seinen Vater zu senden, holte Papier und Bleistift aus seinem Handkoffer und schrieb seinen ersten Brief.

9. Ein Brief.

Plymouth, d. 30. Juni 1905.*

Lieber Vater!†

Du wirst Dich‡ wohl freuen, endlich einmal von mir zu hören und zu erfahren, daß es uns gut geht und daß wir schon im Hafen von Plymouth angekommen sind. Wir haben eine sehr angenehme Überfahrt gehabt. Nur die beiden ersten Tage waren stürmisch, so daß wir nicht auf Deck bleiben konnten. Es war aber ein herrlicher Anblick vom Fenster, wie die großen Wellen über das Schiff brachen.

Wir haben alle Offiziere kennen gelernt und auch allerlei andere Bekanntschaften gemacht. Am besten gefällt uns der zweite Offizier. Er ist kein schöner Mann, aber sehr nett und liebenswürdig. Gleich am ersten Tage führte er uns durch das ganze Schiff und zeigte und erklärte uns alles. Der Kapitän ist ein großer, kräftiger Mann, der immer ernst aus-

---

9. Beschreiben Sie ein Kriegsschiff!

10. Was kam von der Stadt? 11. Wozu kam der kleine Dampfer? 12. Was machte Karl nun? 13. Womit schreibt man?

9. 1. Wann kam das Schiff im Hafen von Plymouth an? 2. Ging es den Freunden noch gut? 3. Hatten sie eine gute Überfahrt gehabt? 4. Was hatten sie vom Fenster gesehen?

5. Wen hatten sie kennen gelernt? 6. Beschreiben Sie den Kapitän! 7. den zweiten Offizier! 8. Woher wissen Sie, daß dieser nett war?

*22 a, Note. †10 b. ‡2 b.

guish their cannon very well through the telescope; and they looked quite dangerous too.

As he saw the little steamer coming[5] from the city to get the passengers who wished to land here, Erich said to me, "Will you not take the opportunity to send a letter to your parents? I will get you paper and pencil from[6] my valise." I was glad to be able to send[7] news, and now wrote[8] my first letter.

9. A Letter.

PLYMOUTH, June 30, 1905.[1]

[My] dear Parents: —[2]

We have just arrived in Plymouth Harbor. I know you[3] will be glad to get a letter at last, and to learn that [all] (it) is going well [with] us.[4] We had[5] two stormy days, but otherwise the trip across was very pleasant. During the storm we could not remain on deck, yet the great waves looked magnificent as they broke over the ship. Of course we could see them only from the window.

We have made all kinds of acquaintances on board. On the very first day, we became[5] acquainted with the captain. He is a typical German, tall and strong, with fair hair and blue eyes, and with an earnest yet friendly face. The second officer pleases us better, for even if he[6] is not so handsome, he is nicer and kinder. He has taken us through the whole ship and shown and explained everything [to][7] us.

We hope to find letters from home at Hamburg. As

---

[5] inf., 32 e. [6] aus. [7] ſenden zu können. [8] wrote now, 43 b.

9. [1] 22 a, Note. [2] 10 b. [3] 2 b. [4] dat. alone. [5] use perf. tense, 27. [6] wenn er auch. [7] 21 c.

sieht, wenn er auch ein freundliches Gesicht hat. Er ist ein typischer Deutscher mit blondem Haar und blauen Augen.

Übermorgen sind wir in Hamburg. Dort hoffe ich Briefe von Dir zu finden. Du hast sie „postlagernd" adressiert, nicht wahr? Jetzt muß ich schließen, da die Post gleich ans Land geht. Mit tausend Grüßen und Küssen an Euch alle

Dein Dich liebender Sohn

Karl.

10. Die Ankunft.

Fast den ganzen Tag hatte man Land in Sicht. Zunächst war es noch die englische, später die französische Küste; denn das Schiff mußte Cherbourg anlaufen, damit die Passagiere landen konnten, welche nach Paris wollten. Dann ging es mitten durch den Kanal nach Nordosten. Am nächsten Morgen war man in der Nordsee, mit den niedrigen deutschen Inseln zur Rechten. Auch konnte man weit in der Ferne zur Linken das kleine Eiland Helgoland erblicken. Dann kamen Fischerboote, bald einzeln, bald in kleinen Gruppen. Häufig zeigten sich jetzt auch Leuchtschiffe, und nachmittags gegen halb vier Uhr kam man in Cuxhaven an.

Hier gab es wieder großen Wirrwarr. Passagiere packten ihre Sachen ein, liefen hin und her und stellten tausend Fragen über alles mögliche. Offiziere gaben laute Befehle und Matrosen eilten dieselben auszuführen. Die Musik spielte und die Leute auf dem Landungsplatz riefen uns zu und schwenkten ihre Taschentücher.

---

9. Was hofft Karl in Hamburg zu finden? 10. Warum schrieb er keinen längeren Brief? 11. Warum hatte er nicht früher geschrieben? 12. Was bedeutet „postlagernd"?

10. 1. Wohin fuhr der Dampfer von Plymouth? 2. Wohin von Cherbourg? 3. Wo waren Karl und Erich am nächsten Morgen? 4. Was konnte man jetzt sehen? 5. Wann und wo landeten sie? 6. Warum gab es hier solchen Wirrwarr? 7. Beschreiben Sie die Landung!

we do not know exactly where we shall be, you must address everything *Poste Restante.* Just think, day after to-morrow we shall be[8] in Germany. Now the mail is going ashore, so I must close. With love to all of you,[9]

Your loving son,

KARL.

10. The Arrival.

On this day we saw two new countries, England and France, for some passengers wished [to go] to[1] Paris and had to be landed at Cherbourg. So we went from one coast to the other and had land in sight almost the whole day. After we had left Cherbourg, we sailed[2] straight through the Channel to[3] [the] northeast. The next day was very interesting. We were in the North Sea and could see the low German islands on the right, and far in the distance the little island [of] Helgoland besides.[4] Now[5] we saw lightships, now[5] fishing-boats, alone or in small groups. At half past three o'clock[6] in the afternoon we caught sight of Cuxhaven.

Now the passengers began to pack their things, to run hither and thither, and to ask all sorts of questions. This caused, of course, great confusion. Sailors hastened through the crowd to carry out the commands of the officers. On board the band played, on the shore the people shouted to us and waved their handkerchiefs.

As soon as the ship lay at the quay, the bridge was brought up and we went ashore and into the custom-

---

[8] pres., 25 a. [9] imitate the close of the German letter.

10. [1] nach. [2] fahren. [3] nach. [4] dazu. [5] bald . . . bald. [6] um halb vier.

Endlich lag der Dampfer an dem Kai, die Brücke wurde angelegt und die Passagiere stiegen ans Land und gingen in das große Zollgebäude. Dort mußten die beiden Freunde wie alle anderen ihr Gepäck aufmachen. Da sie aber nichts Zollpflichtiges hatten, waren sie bald damit fertig und konnten gleich durch die Wartehalle zu dem Zuge gehen, der schon auf sie wartete, um sie nach Hamburg zu bringen.

11. Die deutschen Eisenbahnen.

Nach einer zweistündigen Fahrt fuhr der Zug über die Elbe und hielt bald in dem Hannoverschen Bahnhof* an. Die Freunde hatten einen Empfehlungsbrief an eine Leipziger Familie und wollten gleich weiter reisen. Also nahmen sie eine Droschke und fuhren nach dem Klostertor-Bahnhof, denn die meisten Leipziger Züge fahren dort ab.† Dort mußten sie ein paar Stunden warten und hatten also Zeit genug, sich Bahnhof und Züge genau anzusehen. Zuerst kauften sie sich ein Kursbuch, um den besten Zug auszusuchen. Hierin fanden sie sich leicht zurecht, denn die deutschen Fahrpläne sind sehr praktisch eingerichtet.

Während sie auf dem Bahnhof warteten, fuhren fortwährend Züge vorbei, so daß sie die beste Gelegenheit hatten, die deutschen Züge mit den amerikanischen zu vergleichen. Die kleinen Lokomotiven mit den gellenden Pfiffen kamen ihnen gar komisch

8. Wo mußten die Passagiere hingehen? 9. Was mußten sie auf dem Zollamt machen? 10. Warum konnten Karl und Erich bald zum Zuge gehen?

11. 1. Wie lange fährt man von Cuxhaven nach Hamburg? 2. Warum wollten die Freunde gleich weiter reisen? 3. Warum fuhren sie nach dem Klostertor-Bahnhof? 4. Was kauften sie sich dort?

5. Vergleichen Sie die deutschen Züge mit den amerikanischen!

* So called as starting point for line to Hanover. † Now all trains leave the new Central Station.

house. We had nothing dutiable,[7] but had to[8] open up our luggage, nevertheless,[8] like all the others. We were, however, soon through with that.[9] As the train was already waiting to take us to Hamburg, we immediately went through the waiting-room and got aboard.

11. The German Railways.

After a somewhat monotonous ride of about two hours, we crossed the Elbe and soon found ourselves in the Hanover station. "Shall[1] we stay here a few days before we travel on?" asked Erich. "I believe not," I replied; "you know we have a letter of introduction to[2] a family in Leipzig, and I should like[3] to be[4] there as soon as possible.[5] Let us buy[6] a railway-guide and look up the best train." "Can you make it out?"[7] asked Erich. "Of course," I replied; "these German time-tables are very conveniently arranged."

As our train went from the Klostertor Station, we took a cab and drove thither. We had enough time to attend to everything, and had to wait two hours besides.[8] During this time, we had [a good] opportunity to compare the German[9] cars with the American,[9] for trains went by continually. "Just see that little locomotive," said Erich, as the first [one] came by, "and hear the whistle; isn't it shrill?" "Yes," I replied, "and don't the cars look like toys, especially those on[10] the freight-trains?"

---

[7] 1. [8] mußten jedoch. [9] damit fertig, 17.

11. [1] sollen. [2] an. [3] pret. subj. of mögen, with adv. gern, 30 b 1, Note 1. [4] sein, without zu, 29, Note. [5] 43 a. [6] Kaufen wir uns or Wir wollen uns kaufen. [7] Follow German model. [8] außerdem zwei Stunden. [9] 3 b. [10] gen. without prep.

vor, die Eisenbahnwagen, besonders die Güterwagen, waren wie Spielzeug. Nicht alle Personenwagen waren gleich, denn es gibt in Deutschland vier verschiedene Klassen. Die Reisenden wollten nicht zu viel Geld ausgeben, also lösten sie Fahrkarten dritter Klasse, obgleich die schlichten Wagen mit den ungepolsterten Sitzen nicht allzu bequem sind. In dem Fahrplan stand ihr Zug bezeichnet: S. 1–3; d. h.* es war ein Schnellzug mit Wagen 1., 2. und 3. Klasse† und fuhr schneller als die gewöhnlichen Personenzüge.

12. Die deutschen Eisenbahnen (Schluß).

Endlich rief ein Eisenbahnbeamter: „Einsteigen in der Richtung Magdeburg, Halle, Leipzig," und der Zug war da. Ein Wagen dritter Klasse trug die Aufschrift „Nach Leipzig über Magdeburg-Halle," und die Freunde stiegen hier ein, um nicht umsteigen zu müssen. Um bessere Luft zu haben, wählten sie einen mit der Aufschrift „Nichtraucher" versehenen Abteil.

„Abfahren!" rief der Bahnhofsvorsteher. Dann gab der Zugführer ein Zeichen, die Schaffner machten alle Türen zu, der Maschinist ließ den Dampf an, und bald lag Hamburg weit hinter ihnen.

Die Freunde hatten den Abteil für sich allein; also legten sie ihre Reisedecken auf die beiden hölzernen Sitze und streckten sich

6. Wie viele Klassen gibt es in Deutschland? 7. Warum fuhren Karl und Erich dritter Klasse? 8. Warum sind die Wagen 3ter Klasse nicht so bequem, wie die Wagen 1. und 2. Klasse? 9. Mit was für einem Zuge fuhren die Freunde?

12. 1. Was rief der Eisenbahnbeamte, als der Zug ankam? 2. Wie wußten Karl und Erich, wo sie einsteigen sollten? 3. Was für einen Abteil nahmen sie?

4. Nennen Sie einige Bahnbeamte! 5. Was machten diese? 6. Was taten die Freunde im Wagen?

* das heißt. † erster, zweiter und dritter Klasse.

We noticed that the cars were not all alike. On most of the[11] passenger-cars was the Roman figure "III." Some had the figure "II," some "I," and others, which looked almost like freight-cars, the figure "IV." "What class shall we take[12]?" I asked Erich. "Well,[13] our train is an express and has no fourth class," he replied; "so we must go third.[14] Second[15] and first[15] are too dear for us.[16] To be sure the cushionless seats are not very comfortable, but you know we do not wish[17] to spend too much money. At any rate I'm glad that our train is an express and that it goes faster than the ordinary accommodation trains."

12. The German Railways (*Concluded*).

After we had waited a long time, we heard some one call, "All aboard for Magdeburg, Halle and Leipzig."[1] "That must be our train," said Erich; "where do we get aboard?" "This car has the sign 'Leipzig via Magdeburg and Halle,'"[1] I replied, "therefore we should not have to[2] change if we got in here. Do you wish to smoke on the way?" I asked; "if not, let's take a compartment where smoking is not allowed,[3] then we shall have better air." "All aboard," called the guard now, and closed the door. Then the station-master called "Pull out," and the conductor gave a sign to the engineer, who turned on the steam.

"Isn't it fine that we have the compartment to ourselves,"[4] said Erich; "to be sure it isn't very good

---

[11] the most. [12] 25 a. [13] nun, 35 a, Note 2. [14] Alſo müſſen wir dritter (Klaſſe, gen. case) fahren. [15] nom. case. [16] us (dat.) too dear. [17] wollen.

12. [1] Follow German model. [2] pret. subj. of brauchen, 30 b, 1. [3] Nichtraucher. [4] für uns.

der Länge nach darauf aus. Als Kopfkissen diente eine Reisetasche. Alles übrige Gepäck hatten sie oben in das Netz getan.

Es schläft sich nicht sehr gut auf den harten Bänken, aber Erich und Karl waren so müde, daß sie erst mit der Morgendämmerung wieder aufwachten. Der Zug war eben in einen Bahnhof eingefahren. „Magdeburg, 10 Minuten Aufenthalt!" rief der Schaffner und machte die Tür auf. Kellner liefen auf dem Bahnsteig auf und ab und riefen, „Kaffee gefällig? warme Würstchen?" Karl und Erich hatten beide großen Hunger und Durst, tranken eine Tasse heißen Kaffee und kauften sich für 60 Pfennig Brötchen und Wurst.

Von Magdeburg fuhren sie noch ein paar Stunden weiter nach Süden und kamen dann um etwa 7 Uhr vormittags in Leipzig an.

13. Das Hotel.

Ein Gepäckträger war sogleich an der Tür, um ihre Sachen zur Droschke zu bringen. Nachdem er auch die Koffer geholt und dieselben auf den Bock getan hatte, gab ihm Karl 50 Pfg. Dann fuhren sie in die Stadt. Anstatt in einem großen Hotel einzukehren, wo alles teuer ist und man viele Trinkgelder geben muß, hatten sich die Freunde entschlossen, in dem kleinen bescheidenen „Evangelischen Hospiz" einzukehren. Also sagten sie dem Kutscher, er solle sie nach Roßstraße 14 fahren.

Als sie da vor der großen Haustür hielten, kam der Portier heraus, um sie zu empfangen. Ein Hausknecht nahm das Ge-

---

7. Wo war ihr Gepäck? 8. Warum schliefen sie so gut? 9. Was taten sie in Magdeburg? 10. Wann kamen sie in Leipzig an?

13. 1. Wer war gleich an der Tür? 2. Was machte der Gepäckträger? 3. Warum gingen die Reisenden nicht in ein großes Hotel? 4. Wohin brachte sie der Kutscher?

5. Wer empfing sie da? 6. Was machte der Hausknecht?

sleeping[1] here, but we can lay our traveling-blankets on the two wooden seats and then stretch ourselves out at full-length upon them. But first we must put the rest of the baggage in the rack." "But we have no pillows," I said. "Yes, we have too,"[5] answered Erich. "Our satchels can serve as pillows." Then we lay down, and we were so tired that we did not awake till[1] dawn. We had just come into a station. The brakeman opened the door and called: "Magdeburg! The train stops for ten minutes."[1] Thereupon a waiter came, and as Erich said he was[6] very hungry, I told the waiter he should[6] give us two cups [of] coffee[7] and 60 pfg. worth of[1] rolls and sausages.

An hour and a half[8] farther to the south came Halle. Here we began to pack our things together and get ready to leave the train, for the next station was Leipzig. Soon we were in the city, arriving[9] (at) about 7 o'clock at the Magdeburg Station.

13. The Hotel.

"Here, porter,"[1] we called to one[2] who stood at the door, "take[3] these things to a cab, and get our trunks too." After he had brought everything and put it on the box, I gave him 50 pfg. Before we drove into town, I asked Erich if we should[4] put up at a large hotel. He replied that everything would be[5] expensive, and that we should have to give[6] too many tips. "Let's g rather to the modest little 'Evangelical Hospice' of which our friend told us," he said. "Very well," I replied; "and

---

[5] doch. [6] pres. subj., 30 a. [7] 13. [8] anderthalb Stunden. [9] 32 a.

13. [1] Sie da, Gepäckträger! [2] einem zurufen. [3] Bringen Sie. [4] pret. subj., 30 a, Note 1. [5] 30 a and Note 2. [6] würden geben müssen, 36 a, Note 3.

päck und trug es auf den Flur. „Was ist die Taxe?“ fragte Karl den Kutscher. „2 Mark,“ antwortete dieser. „Hier haben Sie 2 Mark 50,“ sagte Karl, und der Kutscher freute sich sehr über das große Trinkgeld.

„Können wir ein Zimmer mit zwei Betten zu 2 M. 50 oder 3 M. bekommen?“ fragte er dann den Portier. „Es tut mir leid, die sind alle besetzt,“ erwiderte dieser, „aber wir haben ein sehr freundliches Zimmer zu 3.50. Es ist eben frei geworden.“ „Gut! Das nehmen wir,“ sagte Karl, „bitte, zeigen Sie es uns.“ So führte sie denn der Portier hinauf und schickte einen Hausknecht hinunter, der ihre Sachen heraufholte.

Jetzt wurde ausgepackt und alles in Ordnung gebracht. Inzwischen war es Mittag geworden, und Erich schlug vor in die Stadt zu gehen. „Meinetwegen,“ antwortete Karl und die Freunde brachen auf, um ein Restaurant aufzusuchen.

14. Das Restaurant.

Man hatte ihnen von dem alten „Thüringerhof“ erzählt. Also gingen sie dahin und fanden ein altes malerisches Haus aus dem 16ten Jahrhundert, dessen Fassade ganz bemalt war. Sie gingen durch eine niedrige Tür, dann direkt an der Küche vorbei in ein großes mit hölzernen Tischen und Stühlen versehenes Zimmer. An einem Tische saßen viele Studenten mit weißen Mützen. Die Freunde setzten sich an einen Tisch den Studenten gegenüber und beschäftigten sich mit der Speisekarte, bis der Kellner kam.

---

7. Warum freute sich der Kutscher? 8. Was für ein Zimmer bekamen die Freunde? 9. Was machten sie zuerst? 10. Was dann?

14. 1. Beschreiben Sie den Thüringerhof. 2. Wie kamen Karl und Erich in das große Zimmer? 3. Wen sahen sie dort? 4. Was machten sie jetzt?

told the cabman that he should[7] drive us to[8] No. 14 Ross St.[9] After the (portier) [clerk] had received us and the servant had carried our baggage through the large carriage-door into the hall, I paid the driver. He said the fare was 2 marks, so I gave him 2 M. 50 pfg., and that seemed to please him greatly.

"We should like[10] a room with two beds at about 2 M. 50 or 3 M.," I told the portier, and asked if we could[4] get such a one.[11] "I am sorry, but all the rooms at that price are occupied," he answered; "but we can give you a very pleasant room at 3.50." He said that this room had just been vacated[9,12] and that he would show[5] it [to] us. The room pleased us, and we took it. Then the servant brought our things up, and we began to unpack and get everything in order. It was noon by the time[13] we were through, and we were very hungry, so I proposed that we go into town to look for a restaurant. "For all I care," Erich replied, and we then set out together.

14. The Restaurant.

"Let us go to the 'Thüringerhof'," I said; "you know how picturesque and interesting it is said[1] to be. They[2] say that it is[3] of[4] the 16th century." Soon we found the old building, the façade of which was quite covered with pictures. We followed a student through the low door, and past the kitchen into a large room where many students with white caps sat together at a table. This room was provided with many wooden tables and chairs. A

[7] pres. subj. of ſollen, 30 a. [8] nach. [9] Follow German model. [10] pret. subj. of mögen. [11] a such (neutr. strong infl.). [12] perf. subj., 30 a. [13] bis.

14. [1] ſollen. [2] man. [3] 30 a. [4] aus.

„Trinken die Herren Helles oder Dunkles?“ fragte dieser. „Dunkles, bitte,“ sagte Karl. Während der Kellner das dunkelbraune Bier holte, wählten Karl und Erich die Gerichte, die sie essen wollten. Jetzt brachte der Kellner Teller, legte Messer, Gabeln und Löffel daneben, und setzte auch einen Korb voll Brötchen auf den Tisch. Dann bestellte Karl das Essen für die beiden: „Zwei Suppen, bitte, ein Wiener Schnitzel, einen Rinderbraten mit Kartoffeln.“ Nachtisch wollten sie nicht haben. Während der Kellner die Suppe brachte, tranken die Freunde ihr erstes Glas bayrisches Bier. Sie sahen nach den Studenten hinüber, um zu sehen, wie sie es machten, und machten es ihnen nach. „Prosit!“ sagte Karl. „Prosit!“ antwortete Erich, und die beiden stießen mit einander an. Sie taten beide einen kräftigen Zug und machten den Deckel des Kruges zu. Dann aßen sie gemütlich, bezahlten und gingen hinaus, um sich die Stadt ein wenig anzusehen.

15. Ein Spaziergang durch die Stadt.

Als sie aus dem Restaurant kamen, sahen sie rechts am Ende der engen Gasse ein steiles Dach und einen hohen Kirchturm. Es war die Thomaskirche, wo früher der große Komponist Bach die Orgel gespielt hatte. Die Freunde gingen an der Kirche vorbei durch eine kurze Straße und befanden sich bald auf dem alten Marktplatz, dem Mittelpunkt der alten Stadt. Sehr interessant fanden sie das alte Rathaus, ein

5. Was fragte der Kellner? 6. Was brachte er dann? 7. Was bestellte Karl? 8. Warum sahen die Freunde nach den Studenten hinüber? 9. Wie ist die deutsche Sitte beim Biertrinken? 10. Was machten Karl und Erich, nachdem sie gegessen hatten?

15. 1. Was sahen die Freunde, als sie aus dem Restaurant kamen? 2. Wer war Bach? 3. Wo gingen Karl und Erich jetzt hin? 4. Beschreiben Sie das Rathaus.

table opposite the students was unoccupied, so we sat down at it[5] and studied the bill-of-fare.

Soon a waiter came and asked what we should like[6] to order. "Please bring us two plates [of] soup, one veal-cutlet, and one roast-beef with potatoes," I said; "we don't care for dessert." "The gentlemen drink dark [(Bavarian) beer], I suppose?[7]" said the waiter. "Yes, two glasses,[8] please," I replied.

While the waiter brought the plates and a basket full [of] rolls[9] and laid the knives, forks and spoons on the table, we looked over towards the students who were drinking each other's health,[10] to see [what] (how) the German custom was.[11] Then we drank our first glass [of] Würzburger beer. "Prosit, Erich!" I said, lifting[12] my glass. He imitated me. Then we clinked glasses, took a good draught, and closed the lids. Now we ate at our ease. The dishes tasted very good to us, and we should have eaten[13] more if it had been[13] possible. After we were through, we called the waiter, paid [our bill] and then went out to take a look at the city.

15. A Walk through the City.

"That must be St. Thomas's," said Erich, as he saw the steep roof and the high church-tower at the end of the narrow street. "There the great composer Bach used to[1] play the organ."

We went past the church and through a short street to the old market-place, the central point of the city, in

[5] daran, 17. [6] pret. subj. of mögen. [7] wohl (before Dunkles). [8] sing. 13, Note 1. [9] 13, Note 2. [10] ſich (or einander) zutrinken. [11] pres. subj [12] 32 b. [13] pluperf. subj., 30 b, 2.

15. [1] pflegen.

großes Gebäude in altertümlichem Stil. Am nördlichen Ende des Marktplatzes sahen sie das Siegesdenkmal, welches im Jahre 1888 zur Erinnerung an die Einigung Deutschlands und an den Sieg über die Franzosen errichtet worden war. Oben darauf steht eine weibliche Figur, welche die Germania darstellt; unten sitzt Kaiser Wilhelm I.* An den Ecken stehen Reiterstatuen der großen Helden des Krieges.

Von dem Markt gingen die Freunde in Auerbachs Keller, aus welchem Faust einst auf einem Faß geritten kam. Während seiner Studentenzeit saß hier oft der Dichter Goethe bei seinem Glas Wein und dachte an die alte Geschichte von Faust und dem Teufel.

Jetzt gingen sie nach dem Augustusplatz weiter, um auf der Post anzufragen, ob Briefe für sie da seien. Wie freuten sie sich, einen ganzen Haufen Briefe, Postkarten und Zeitungen vorzufinden. Sie setzten sich auf eine Bank vor dem Museum, der Universität gegenüber, und lasen die willkommenen Nachrichten aus der Heimat. Nachher gingen sie ohne besonderes Ziel weiter, spazierten von Straße zu Straße, bis sie müde wurden, und kehrten dann nach ihrem Gasthof zurück.

16. Der Besuch.

Am nächsten Morgen wollten die Freunde ihren Empfehlungsbrief überreichen und die Familie Wienhold kennen lernen. Sie zogen den Gehrock an, setzten den Zylinder auf,

5. Wann und warum ist das Siegesdenkmal errichtet worden? 6. Beschreiben Sie das Denkmal.

7. Was wissen Sie von Auerbachs Keller? 8. Warum gingen die Freunde auf die Post? 9. Wo lasen sie ihre Briefe? 10. Was machten sie nachher?

16. 1. Was wollten die Freunde heute machen? 2. Welche Kleidung trägt man, wenn man Besuche macht?

* der Erste.

order to see the interesting old city-hall and the [war-monument] (monument of victory). A policeman told us that the woman's figure upon the monument represented Germania. He added that the war monument itself had been erected in 1888 and that it celebrated the victory over the French and the unification of Germany. "You recognize Emperor Wilhelm I, do you not[2]?" I asked Erich. "Yes," he replied, "it is the one who[3] sits below, in the middle. And those figures on horseback are doubtless[4] his generals."

"Now we must see Auerbachs Keller," I said to Erich. "Don't you remember how Faust once came riding[5] out of it[6] on a keg? — and how Goethe used[1] to sit there over his glass [of] wine when he was still [a][7] student and had not yet become a great poet? He must have thought[4] often of[8] the old story of Faust and the devil."

From Auerbachs Keller we went across the Augustus Square to the post-office. There we found a great heap [of] letters and newspapers. There were also some postal-cards with them.[9] How glad we were! We should have been disappointed indeed if we had received nothing. Now we sat down on a bench opposite the University; at our left was the Museum. After we had read the welcome news from home, we walked on without any particular goal, and strolled from one street into another. Finally Erich said that he was tired and begged me to return to the hotel with him.

16. The Call.

I asked Erich the next morning if[1] we should present our letter of introduction that day.[2] "Yes, indeed," he

---

[2] nicht wahr. [3] derjenige, der (welcher). [4] 26. [5] 32 f. [6] daraus, 17. [7] 12 a. [8] an. [9] dabei.

16. [1] 49 g. [2] heute.

und gingen um halb 12 in die Mozartstraße, wo Wienholds wohnten.

Ihr Haus war, wie die meisten in dem Stadtviertel, ein hohes, stattliches Gebäude, mit vier Etagen außer dem Souterrain, wo der Hausmann wohnte. Karl und Erich gingen durch die große Haustür und fragten bei dem Hausmann an, ob der Herr Professor Wienhold da wohne. „Gewiß," war die Antwort, „drei Treppen, links." Die Freunde stiegen die breite, bequeme Treppe hinauf und klingelten. Ein Dienstmädchen machte die Tür auf und fragte, wen sie zu sprechen wünschten. „Ist Herr Professor Wienhold zu Hause?" fragte Karl. „Ja wohl, bitte treten Sie näher," sagte das Mädchen, nahm ihnen die Besuchskarten ab und führte sie in das Empfangszimmer.

Bald kam der Herr Professor herein. Karl überreichte den Brief, indem er sagte, er habe ihm freundliche Grüße von Herrn Braun in New York zu überbringen. „Ich danke Ihnen sehr," erwiderte Herr Wienhold, „wie geht es meinem alten Freund und seiner Familie? und wie kommt es, daß Sie die weite Reise nach Deutschland machen? Oder steht es vielleicht in dem Brief? Gestatten Sie, daß ich ihn gleich lese?" „Bitte sehr, Herr Professor," entgegnete Karl. Jetzt las der Professor den Brief, und nachdem er ihn zu Ende gelesen hatte, war er fast noch freundlicher. „Entschuldigen Sie einen Augenblick, meine Herren," sagte er dann, „ich möchte meine Frau und meine Tochter holen. Mein Sohn ist leider eben in eine Vorlesung gegangen." Darauf verließ er die beiden, welche von seiner Liebenswürdigkeit ganz entzückt waren.

---

3. Wann macht man sie? 4. Wo wohnte Prof. Wienhold? 5. Beschreiben Sie Wienholds Haus. 6. Wer kam an die Tür? 7. Was fragte Karl? 8. Was machte das Mädchen?

9. Wie wurden die Freunde empfangen? 10. Was sagte Karl? 11. Was erwiderte Prof. Wienhold? 12. Welchen Eindruck machte der Brief auf ihn? 13. Warum verließ er die Freunde?

answered, "for I am curious to make the acquaintance of the Wienhold family.[3] We must go between 11.30 and 1, and wear our frock-coats.[4]" "Yes, and we must put on our silk hats[4] too," I added.

At 12 o'clock we stood before the house where [the] Wienholds[5] lived. All the houses in this part of the city were high, stately buildings with large front-doors. The janitor, who lived in the basement story, told us that Prof. Wienhold lived on the fourth floor to the left;[6] so we mounted the broad, convenient stairs and rang the bell.

"Whom do you wish to see[6]?" asked the maid who opened the door. I asked if we could speak to Prof. Wienhold. The maid said that he was at home, asked us to step in, took our cards, and led us into the reception-room.

When the professor came to receive us, I gave him the letter of introduction and told him that I had friendly greetings for him from Mr. Braun in New York. Mr. Wienhold thanked us quite cordially, and asked how Mr. Braun and his family were getting on. "Would you not like to read his letter immediately?" I asked. "Yes, indeed," he replied, "if you [will] permit [me]." After he had read the letter, he seemed almost more friendly than before and said that he knew now how we came to take our long trip. He soon asked if we would excuse him a moment, as he wished to call[7] his wife and daughter. His son had[8] just gone to a lecture. "I am quite charmed by his kindness," said Erich to me after the Professor had left the room.

---

[3] Familie Wienhold. [4] sing., 14. [5] 15. [6] follow German model. [7] holen. [8] ind. discourse.

17. Der Besuch (Schluß).

Bald kam er mit Frau und Tochter zurück. „Ich möchte euch zwei junge Herren aus Amerika vorstellen," sagte er zu den Damen. „Es freut uns sehr, Sie kennen zu lernen," sagten diese, worauf Karl und Erich erwiderten: „Ganz auf unsrer Seite."

Dann fragte der Professor, wo die Freunde logierten, und ob sie schon eine Pension gefunden hätten. „Herr Braun schreibt, daß Sie in einer deutschen Familie wohnen möchten, wo Sie zu etwa 90 bis 100 M. Pension bekommen könnten," sagte er. „Nun, wir haben ein paar kleine Zimmer frei, und wenn Sie anderswo kein Unterkommen finden, so könnten Sie vielleicht bei uns fürlieb nehmen." Karl und Erich versicherten ihm gleich, daß sie dann gar nicht erst anderswo suchen wollten, und daß sie sich freuen würden, da wohnen zu dürfen. „Gut," sagte der Professor, „dann wollen wir einmal sehen, wie Deutschland und Amerika sich vertragen."

„Sie wollen auch tüchtig arbeiten, nicht wahr?" fügte er hinzu. „Ja, wir wollen so viel Deutsch wie möglich lernen," antwortete Karl. „Und so viel wie möglich über deutsche Literatur, Geschichte und Sitten," fügte Erich hinzu. „Schön," entgegnete Prof. Wienhold, „meine Bibliothek steht Ihnen zur Verfügung. Auch könnten Sie vielleicht einmal meine Klassen auf dem Gymnasium besuchen, oder mit meinem Sohne einige öffentliche Universitätsvorlesungen. Bis zum nächsten Seme-

---

17. 1. Was sagt man, wenn man zwei Personen mit einander bekannt macht? 2. Was sagen diese? 3. Was fragte Prof. Wienhold? 4. Wo wollten die Freunde wohnen? 5. Warum wollten sie jetzt keine andere Pension suchen?

6. Warum wollten sie tüchtig arbeiten? 7. Was bot ihnen der Professor an?

17. The Call (*concluded*).

Now he brought his wife and daughter with [him] and introduced us to them. They told us that they were glad to make our acquaintance, and of course we answered that the pleasure was all on our side.

"Where are you staying?" Mr. Wienhold then asked. "You would like to live in a German family, Mr. Braun writes me." "Yes," I responded, "if we could get board and rooms at about 90 to 100 M. a month.[1] As yet we have not looked for any."[2] The professor told us that we might make the best of it with them if we could find no accommodations elsewhere, for they had two small rooms vacant. "Then we shall not seek[3] elsewhere," I said immediately. "We are glad to be permitted to live[4] with you." "Very well," replied Mr. Wienhold, "I believe Germany and America will be able to get along together."

"Mr. Braun writes that you would like to work hard," he added. I told him that we wished to learn as much German as possible. "And as much as possible about German literature, history and customs," added Erich. "Perhaps you can visit my classes in the Gymnasium sometimes," said the professor. "At any rate, it will be possible for you to hear some public lectures at the University with my son, and of course we shall all be glad to help you at any time. My library is at your disposal, too," he added.

"When will you begin to work?" Prof. Wienhold now asked. "We should like to begin immediately, in order that[5] we [may] make considerable progress by next se-

---

17. [1] the month; 22 a. [2] 49 a. [3] pres. tense. [4] wohnen zu dürfen. [5] damit.

ster werden Sie bedeutende Fortschritte gemacht haben und können sich dann immatrikulieren lassen. Heute Nachmittag lassen Sie Ihre Sachen vom Hospiz holen, und morgen können Sie anfangen, sich mit unserer deutschen Geschichte vertraut zu machen."

Diese freundliche Aufnahme war den Freunden ganz unverhofft, und sie fühlten sich der guten Familie Wienhold sehr verbunden.

18. Erichs Brief.

Leipzig, d. 3. Juli 1905.

Lieber alter Hans!

Eben habe ich einen langen Brief an Georg geschrieben, der eigentlich auch für Dich bestimmt ist. Deshalb kriegst Du diesmal nur ein paar Zeilen; das nächste Mal schreibe ich dir den Brief und Georg die paar Zeilen.

Wie Du von Georg erfahren wirst, sind wir nach einer äußerst interessanten Überfahrt glücklich in Leipzig angekommen. Hier haben wir das Glück gehabt, in einer sehr netten und gebildeten Familie volle Pension zu bekommen. Wir sprechen immer Deutsch und werden bald echte Deutsche sein. Es gefällt uns hier sehr. Ich möchte nur, Du könntest auch dabei sein. Viele Grüße an Euch alle.

In alter Freundschaft

Dein Erich.

---

8. Was wollten die Freunde im nächsten Semester machen? 9. Wann sollten sie anfangen zu arbeiten?

10. Welchen Eindruck machte Prof. Wienholds freundliche Aufnahme auf sie?

18. 1. Warum schrieb Erich einen so kurzen Brief an Hans? 2. In was für einer Familie haben die Freunde Pension bekommen? 3. Was ist ein echter Deutscher?

mester," I responded. "You know we wish to enter the University then." "Very well, gentlemen," he said, "you can have[6] your things brought from the Hospice this afternoon. To-morrow we [shall] begin to make you familiar with our German legends and history."

"Would you have expected such a friendly reception?" I asked Erich after we had taken leave. "No, it was quite unexpected," he replied. "We are certainly already greatly indebted to the family."

18. Erich's Letter.

Leipzig, July 3, 1905.

Dear old George:—

We arrived[1] only[2] yesterday in Leipzig, but I have already become a regular German. Karl and I speak nothing but[3] German with each other; to be sure, it is a pretty bad German, but it is (a) good practice, and we are really quite proud of[4] our pronunciation. Of course we always speak German with [the] Wienholds.[5] Professor Wienhold understands English and speaks it very well, but he knows that we came to Germany to learn German, and so refuses to speak even a word[6] [of] English with us. He is a splendid man, large and strong, with fair hair and blue eyes, a typical German. His wife is also very nice, but, as you can imagine, it is the daughter who interests us especially. She is just of[7] our age, very pretty and kind, but also very bashful. But I hope that her bashfulness will disappear gradually. Her brother

---

[6] have brought = bringen laſſen.

18. [1] perf., 27. [2] erſt. [3] als. [4] auf (with acc.). [5] 15. [6] auch nur ein Wort. [7] in.

is a few years[8] older than we and studies philology at[9] the University. He belongs to one of the scientific fraternities, and has promised to introduce us to his fraternity-brothers and to take us with him occasionally when he goes to the evening-gatherings.[10]

19. Erich's Letter (*continued*[1]).

We had[2] a beautiful and interesting passage. The first days were very stormy, but neither Karl nor I became sea-sick. But the others! Good heavens! We enjoyed ourselves, however, even though[3] the others had rather remained[4] on land. The storm was really magnificent. The great waves threatened to swallow up the ship, and the wind howled through the rigging as if [a] thousand devils were shrieking. Then the sea became smooth again and the sea-sick [passengers] reappeared on deck. But the first day[5] they still looked very pale.

We saw[2] only a few ships on the way. Several passed us in the night, but we always slept so well that we heard of it[6] only[7] on the next day. Indeed, we did[2] almost nothing but[8] kill time.[9]

We arrived in Plymouth Harbor early one morning. There we saw England for the first time. In the afternoon we saw France. Land was in sight almost the whole day: at first we could see the English, later the French coast. In the evening we saw lights to the left and right. There lay Dover on the one side, Calais on the other. The next day,[5] we sailed past the little island

---

[8] acc., 22 a. [9] auf. [10] auf die Kneipe.

19. [1] Fortsetzung. [2] perf. [3] wenn .... auch. [4] pluperf. subj. [5] acc., 22 a, or an with dat. [6] davon. [7] erst. [8] als. [9] die Zeit totgeschlagen.

of Helgoland, and landed in Cuxhaven (at) about half past three o'clock.

20. Erich's Letter (*concluded*[1]).

From Cuxhaven we went[2] to Hamburg in a special train. We should have liked to remain[3] here a few days to take a look at the city, but determined to go on to Leipzig immediately. We enjoyed[4] ourselves very [much] yesterday. After we had everything in order, we went through an old part of the town to the Thüringerhof, a picturesque building[5] at least four centuries old. Here [there] is an excellent restaurant, frequented especially by students. At a table opposite to us sat many with white caps. They smoked and drank enough,[6] but seemed to be more quiet and polite than (the) most of us American students.

After (the) dinner, we took a walk through the city, going past[7] the Post Office to ask if letters had[8] come for us. You can imagine how glad we were to find a whole heap [of] letters and papers.

To-day we called on the Wienholds and found that we can live with them. From now on until Christmas, we intend[9] to work hard.[6] We wish to read a great deal of German. At first we shall begin with fairy-tales, legends and that kind of easy reading. Then we shall read[10] the classics and important works on[11] literature, history, and customs. We intend[9] also to write many compositions.

---

20. [1] Schluß. [2] fahren. [3] pluperf. subj. with adv. gern. [4] perf. [5] dat. in apposition. [6] tüchtig. [7] **32 a.** [8] perf. subj., **30 a.** [9] wollen. [10] pres. or wollen wir . . . lesen. [11] über.

For this[12] we have the same plan as for our reading: first come the easy[13] [things], then the difficult[13] [ones].

Now I must close. With kindest regards[14] to[15] your parents, I remain,

Your old friend,

ERICH.

21. The Day's Program.[1]

LEIPZIG, Nov. 28, 1905.

Dear Father:—

You would undoubtedly be glad[2] to know exactly how we spend our days here in the "Fatherland." Well then, I will give you an exact, if[3] somewhat prosaic, account.

As we usually go to bed quite late, we do not get up any too[4] early. (At) about eight o'clock, breakfast is brought to[5] our room. This consists merely of coffee and rolls. After (the) breakfast Erich and I go to Prof. Schmidt's lecture on German Literature in the Eighteenth Century and Prof. Meyer's lecture on Phonetics. These are both very interesting, but one gets pretty hungry in the meantime. Therefore our second, or "fork breakfast," tastes very good when we come home at 11. For[6] this second breakfast we have sandwiches and cold meat, with a bottle of beer. Then we return to[7] the University or, sometimes,[8] go to the[9] Museum to see the paintings and statues.

At 1.30[10] dinner is ready, with soup, roast pork, potatoes, salad and something good for[11] dessert. Of course we always have beer, for that takes the place of (the) water in this country. After (the) dinner we sometimes take[12] a

---

[12] hierfür. [13] adj. neut. sing., 1. [14] the heartiest greetings. [15] an (with acc.).

21. [1] Verlauf des Tages. [2] pres. cond. [3] wenn auch. [4] allzu. [5] auf. [6] zu. [7] nach. [8] 43 b. [9] ins. [10] halb zwei. [11] zum. [12] machen.

little nap, but generally we read or chat with the Wienholds, or listen while Frau Wienhold plays duets with Hans, or Fräulein Wienhold sings to her mother's accompaniment. Then we all go walking [for] an hour or so[13] through the Rosental or along the river[14] to Connewitz. At four or five o'clock we drink coffee, either in some restaurant on our walk or at home. Generally some acquaintances of the Wienholds come [in], and then we chat for an hour or more.[15]

22. The Day's Program (*concluded*).

Yesterday it was very cold, and we spent the afternoon skating[1] on a little skating-rink in one of the suburbs. Usually, however, we have a lecture on French literature on Monday afternoon.

For (the)[2] supper, which comes at seven or eight, we have mostly sausage or sliced cold meats with salad, and tea or beer. Of course (the) cheese is never missing. We have not yet[3] been able to accustom ourselves[4] to[5] all the German dishes, and blood-pudding and some kinds [of] cheese are still a little too much for us.

At least two or three times a[6] week there is[7] a performance of some fine opera or play at the[8] theater, and in that case we have supper earlier, for the performance begins at seven or sometimes at six. We students get our seats very cheap, and so are able to go to the theater quite often.

After the performance we go to[9] some restaurant or

---

[13] etwa eine Stunde. [14] am Fluß entlang. [15] ein Stündchen plaudern.

22. [1] mit Schlittschuhlaufen, 32 g. [2] zum. [3] noch nicht, after uns. [4] uns . . . gewöhnen können. [5] an. [6] the. [7] es gibt. [8] im. [9] in (with acc.).

café, generally the Thüringerhof, to get a little lunch and to discuss the play or opera and the playing of the various actors.

Twice a[10] week we go to the meetings[11] of the Modern Philology Club,[12] for,[13] as I wrote you, I have become a member. These meetings are very interesting and are the most characteristic [feature] of our life here.[14] [At] some other time I must describe one to you. We go at 8 o'clock and get[15] home — well, I think I'd better not say[16] when.

You can see then how occupied we are and how many opportunities we have for learning[17] German. But now I must close this schedule-like letter and set about[18] my reading. With much love to you all,

[Yours] (Your loving son),

KARL.

23. Christmas at [the] Wienholds.

"Would you like [to go][1] down town[2] with [me] to-morrow morning[3]?" asked Mr. Wienhold one day shortly before Christmas, turning[4] to his young American friends. "Day after to-morrow is Christmas, and we should have the tree to-morrow in order to decorate it for (the) Christmas Eve." Of course the friends were glad to accompany their host, and the next morning the three went down town together to make their purchases and to choose a tree.

---

[10] the. [11] Sitzungen. [12] der Neuphilologische Verein. [13] omit comma. [14] hiesiges Leben. [15] kommen. [16] ich sage lieber nicht. [17] zu lernen, 32 e. [18] beginnen.

23. [1] 31 b. [2] in die Stadt. [3] morgen früh, 43 a. [4] indem, 32 b.

Everyone (whom)[5] they met was quite laden with packages; wagons rolled through the streets, stopping[6] here and there to deliver packages, and one felt that a holiday was close at hand.

It seemed as if the markets and squares had become[7] little evergreen forests, for trees were standing everywhere.

"How interesting it would be[8] if one could[8] follow each single tree into the house which it is to[9] adorn," said Karl. "Yes, but that would demand[10] too much time," replied Herr Wienhold. "There are thousands of them. No German family would dispense with its tree. Even where there are[11] no little children in the house, the adults rejoice in the tree as if they had become[7] children again. If you walk through the streets this evening, you will see the trees shining out[12] everywhere through the windows of the countless dwellings. It is as if one were in fairyland."

After all the Christmas presents had been purchased and the tree brought home, the whole family set about adorning it.[13] Tinsel, glass balls, gilded walnuts, apples, etc., not to forget the many colored candles, were put upon it. Then it was left to itself in the Christmas room and no one was permitted[14] to see it. In[15] the evening Herr Wienhold disappeared for[16] a few minutes; then a signal was given, Herr Wienhold opened the folding doors, and there stood the tree, [with] all its candles lighted. After the first "Ah!" of admiration and pleasure, and

---

[5] 19 a. [6] 32 a. [7] pluperf. subj. [8] pret. subj., 30 b, 1. [9] ſollen. [10] pres. cond., 30 b, 1 and Note 1. [11] es gibt. [12] 32 e. [13] ſich daran machen . . . ihn zu putzen. [14] dürfen. [15] an. [16] auf.

while the tree was shedding its soft light through the room, Fräulein Wienhold went to[17] the piano, and all joined in with her as she sang the German Christmas song, "O Tannenbaum." After[18] this song and a few others were sung, the distribution of gifts began.

"How kind of you to give me a genuine American fountain pen," exclaimed Fräulein Wienhold as she found Karl's card in the first package which she opened. "And what[19] a charming calendar," she said, turning[20] to Erich to thank him for his gift.

But it would take too much time to describe all the gifts. We must not forget, however, the handsomely bound Schiller that[21] the Wienholds gave Karl, nor the Heine that Erich received.

After[18] the distribution of gifts and after[18] the lights of the Christmas tree had gradually burnt down, Frau Wienhold brought in a huge punch-bowl from which a delicious odor was streaming. After[18] all honor had been done[22] to the excellent drink, Frau Wienhold proposed some music, and the evening was devoted to the singing[23] of folk and student songs,[24] with an occasional solo by Fräulein Wienhold, who sang very beautifully, and by her brother, who played the violin with a great deal of expression.

---

23. [17] an. [18] 49 h. [19] welch or was für. [20] 32 b. [21] den (welchen). [22] one had done, 24 a. [23] 32 g. [24] Volks- und Studentenlieder, 8.

Erſter Teil — Part First.

[B.] Briefe — Letters.

Briefe.*

I. An Verwandte und Freunde.

1. Leipzig, d. 12. Nov. 1905.

Liebe Tante!

Willst Du so freundlich sein mir umgehend die Adresse von Herrn Franke zu senden? Ich muß an ihn schreiben und habe ganz und gar vergessen, wo er jetzt wohnt.

Mit vielen Grüßen an Dich und Onkel

Dein Dich liebender Neffe

Heinrich.

2. Leipzig, 10. XII.† 1905.

Lieber alter Karl!

Kannst Du morgen zum Abendbrot zu uns kommen? Meine Cousine aus Dresden ist jetzt bei uns auf Besuch und ich weiß wohl, daß sie Dir gefallen wird, da sie sehr hübsch ist und großartig Klavier spielt.

Dein alter

Fritz.

3. Leipzig, d. 10. Dez. 1905.

Lieber alter Fritz!

Herzlichen Dank für die liebenswürdige Einladung, die ich natürlich mit Freuden annehme. Auf die Cousine bin ich sehr gespannt. Mit besten Grüßen an die Deinigen

Dein

Karl.

---

* In directing the envelope, always give full titles of person addressed:

Herrn Prof. Dr. Ludwig Schmidt,
Leipzig.
Mozartstr. 140 II.

† The Roman numerals are often used instead of the names of the month.

Letters.*

I. To Relatives and Friends.

1. LEIPZIG, Nov. 14th, 1905.[1]

[My] dear Uncle:[2]

I have just received your (dear) letter, in which you ask me to send you Miss Müller's address by return mail. I am very sorry that I haven't it[3] any longer, but I hope to get it from my friend Hans, and in that case I shall send it to you immediately.

Yours as ever,[4]

MAX.

2. LEIPZIG, Dec. 16, 1905.

[My] dear Clara:[5]

My cousin is coming to-morrow. You remember that I told you how magnificently he plays [the] violin. Well, to-morrow, after supper, we [are to] have music and some of our friends are coming. Of course we expect you and Hans, and I have told my cousin that you would accompany him.

[A] thousand greetings to you and yours,

Your loving

HEDWIG.

3. LEIPZIG, Dec. 16, 1905.

Dear Hedwig:

Thank you [a] thousand times for the kind invitation. I am very glad that I shall hear your cousin play.

---

[1] 22 a, Note. [2] 10 b. [3] 16. [4] Wie immer Dein. [5] Klärchen.

* In these letters, follow dating, punctuation and style of German model.

4. Berlin, d. 8. Sept. 1905.

Lieber Herr Professor!

Da ich nächsten Dienstag über Halle fahre und dort bequem einen Zug überschlagen kann, so würde es mir eine große Freude sein, Sie und Ihre Frau Gemahlin wiederzusehen. Wollen Sie also die Freundlichkeit haben, mich zu benachrichtigen, ob Sie dann zu Hause sind und ob Ihnen mein Besuch nicht ungelegen kommt? Falls es Ihnen nicht paßt, so sagen Sie es nur aufrichtig. Dann können wir uns ein anderes Mal sehen. Mit den besten Grüßen auch seitens meiner Frau an Sie und Ihre Frau Gemahlin verbleibe ich

Ihr ganz ergebener

Paul Körner.

II. An ferner Stehende.

1. Leipzig, den 31sten Dez. 1905.

Verehrter Herr Professor!

Zum Jahreswechsel möchte ich Ihnen meine herzlichsten Glückwünsche senden. Möge Ihnen das neue Jahr nur Gutes bringen, und ebenso große Erfolge wie das vergangene!

Zu gleicher Zeit möchte ich Ihnen nochmals meinen herzlichsten Dank aussprechen für Ihr freundliches Entgegenkommen und die anregenden Stunden, welche ich in Ihren Vorlesungen sowie im Kreise Ihrer werten Familie verbracht habe. Ich werde die schönen Abende gern im Gedächtnis bewahren, besonders wenn ich drüben in dem fernen Lande bin und nicht mehr Gelegenheit habe, so schöne Musik zu hören und an so anregenden Unterhaltungen teilzunehmen. Ich kann Ihnen versichern, daß Sie sehr viel getan haben, mir den Aufenthalt in Deutschland angenehm und wertvoll zu machen, und daß

But can't someone else[1] accompany him? I am afraid to try it.

(With the heartiest greetings,)

Your loving

KLÄRCHEN.

4. BERLIN, Sept. 12, 1905.

My dear Professor Busse:[2]

I have just heard[3] that you are going to Stralsund next Wednesday, via Berlin. Now you know that you owe us a visit, and since it will be possible for you to wait over a train, we are surely counting upon seeing[4] you and your wife. We shall be at home Wednesday and have no other engagement. You will not inconvenience us at all. Can you let me know by[5] Sunday whether we shall have the pleasure of having you with[6] us? My wife sends kindest regards[7] [to] you both Hoping[8] to see you soon, I remain

Sincerely yours,[9]

WALTHER VOGT.

II. To more distant Acquaintances.

1. HEIDELBERG, Dec. 31, 1905.

Dear Professor Schmidt:

I should like to send you my heartiest congratulations upon[10] your fiftieth birthday. [To] how few has (the) time brought so much good[11] and so many successes! May you[12] remain well, and may you live to

---

[1] jemand anders. [2] Lieber Herr Profeſſor! [3] As a rule avoid beginning letters with Ich. Begin here: Soeben habe ich gehört. [4] rechnen wir ſicher darauf ... zu ſehen. [5] bis. [6] bei. [7] läßt ... herzlichſt grüßen. [8] 32 b. [9] Follow German model. [10] Zu. [11] 1. [12] Mögen Sie.

ich den deutschen Charakter und das deutsche Gemüt noch höher schätze, seitdem ich das Glück gehabt, Sie kennen zu lernen.

Mit den besten Grüßen an Sie, verehrter Herr Professor, wie auch an Ihre Frau Gemahlin, verbleibe ich, mit der größten Hochachtung

Ihr ganz ergebener

Heinrich Krause.

2. (*a*)

Professor Braun und Frau beehren sich, Herrn Dr. Fischer zum einfachen Abendbrot auf Sonnabend den 13ten Januar einzuladen.

Leipzig, d. 8. Jan. 1906.

U. A. W. G.*

(*b*)

Dr. Fischer bedauert sehr, daß es ihm wegen Unwohlseins unmöglich ist, der liebenswürdigen Einladung von Herrn und Frau Schmidt Folge zu leisten.

Leipzig, d. 9. I. 1906.

3. Dresden, den 15ten Dez. 1905.

Sehr geehrte Frau!

Hierdurch möchte ich Sie ergebenst bitten, als Mitglied des geschäftsführenden Ausschusses in unserem Verein zu fungieren. Wir hoffen in diesem Jahre viel Neues im Verein zu veranstalten, unter anderem eine Serie von Vorträgen von bedeutenden Schriftstellern. Sie würden gewiß viel Freude an der Arbeit im Komitee haben, wenn manches auch ziemlich uninteressant und zeitraubend sein mag. Ich hoffe aber sehr, daß Ihnen Ihre Zeit erlauben wird dieses Amt zu überneh-

* Um Antwort wird gebeten.

present the world other works [such] as your "History of German Literature," which I am now reading for the[1] third time.

On this occasion[2] I wish to express (to you) my thanks again for all your kindness. Your friendly interest has helped me greatly, and I have much appreciated it. I hardly need to tell you how inspiring the hours have been which I have spent at your house and in your lecture-room. Thanking[3] you and congratulating[3] you again,[4] I remain, with kindest regards to Mrs. Schmidt,[5]

Yours very sincerely,

HEINRICH KRAUSE.

2. (*a*)

Mrs. Körner requests the pleasure of Mr. and Mrs. Braun's company at dinner next Thursday evening, January the eighteenth.

LEIPZIG, January twelfth, 1906.

(*b*)

Mr. and Mrs. Braun are delighted to be able to accept[6] Mrs. Körner's kind invitation for Thursday.

LEIPZIG, January thirteenth, 1906.

3. HANOVER, April 14, 1906.

Dear Sir:[7]

As [a] member of the executive committee of the Women's Club of Hanover,[8] I have the honor to request you to give a lecture[9] before our club this summer.

---

[1] zum. [2] Bei dieser Gelegenheit. [3] 32 b. [4] nochmals. [5] Ihre Frau Gemahlin. [6] annehmen zu können. [7] Sehr geehrter Herr. [8] Frauenverein zu Hannover. [9] einen Vortrag halten.

men. Sie würden dadurch mich wie auch den ganzen Verein zu großem Danke verbinden.

Mit vorzüglicher Hochachtung
Ihre ergebene
Meta Müller
geb. Braun.

III. Geschäftsbriefe.

1. Hamburg, d. 1. Juli 1905.

Herrn Otto Braun in Bremen.

Hiermit ersuche ich Sie, mir umgehend ein Verzeichnis Ihres Verlages übersenden zu wollen. Ich möchte auch zu gleicher Zeit fragen, ob Sie bei pünktlicher Bezahlung eventuell Rabatt gewähren würden.

Hochachtungsvoll
Heinrich Fischer.

2. Bremen, d. 10. Juli 1905.

Sehr geehrter Herr!

Ich teile Ihnen ergebenst mit, daß ich die von Ihnen bestellten Bücher eben an Sie abgeschickt habe. Die erwünschte Goetheausgabe haben wir antiquarisch nicht vorrätig und haben sie auch nirgends auftreiben können. Der Preisunterschied ist aber so gering, daß wir uns erlaubt haben Ihnen die neue Ausgabe gleich mitzusenden. Falls Sie aber zur Annahme nicht geneigt sind, so sind wir gern bereit, dieselbe zurückzunehmen. Indem ich hoffe, daß Sie uns bald mit neuen Aufträgen beehren werden, verbleibe ich mit vorzüglicher Hochachtung

Otto Braun.

I know that you have many other duties, and that your time does not permit you to do everything that you would otherwise gladly take upon yourself.[1] Still I hope very [much] that you will grant us an evening, and I assure you that the whole club would feel itself greatly indebted to you.

Yours most sincerely,[2]

ELSA MÜLLER (née FISCHER).

III. Business Letters.

1. BREMEN, July 10, 1905.

Mr. Gustav Wienhold,[2]

Bremen.

Dear Sir:

In my letter of the 3d inst.[3] I begged you to send me your bill by return mail. As I have not yet received it, and as I leave Bremen this evening, I shall have to ask you to send further communications to [the] enclosed address.

Respectfully yours,

KARL SCHNEIDER.

2. COLOGNE, May 10, 1905.

Mr. Heinrich Müller,

Dresden.

Dear Sir:

I regret to be obliged to inform you that we do not have in stock at present, second-hand,[4] the books which you ordered in your letter of the 13th. We can

---

[1] auf ſich nehmen. [2] imitate German model. [3] d. M. (= dieſes Monats). [4] antiquariſch nicht vorrätig haben, at end of sentence.

IV. Anzeigen.

1. Junge Dame, welche nach Diktat perfekt deutsch und englisch auf der Maschine schreibt, bei gutem Gehalt gesucht. Offerten unter Angabe alles Näheren an

H. Seele & Co.
Dresden, Potsdamerstr. 10.

2. Junger Amerikaner, Student a. d. Universität, sucht volle Pension mit Familienanschluß und Gelegenheit zu deutscher Unterhaltung in gebildeter Familie. Offerten mit Preisangaben unter X 713 an die Expedition des Tageblattes.

furnish them new with five per cent discount from the list price, or, if you prefer to wait until we can obtain them second-hand, we shall be pleased to send them to you as soon as possible.

Hoping that you will honor us with your order, we remain

Very truly yours,

NEUMANN & WINTER.

IV. Advertisements.

1. [A] young German, who is desirous of[1] perfecting himself in English,[2] wishes to exchange lessons with American or English student.

2. Young American lady, pupil in the conservatory, wishes[3] board and room in cultured German family. Opportunity for German conversation and family life desired.

3. Young men,[4] (who are) able to correspond in English,[5] French, and German, [will] find excellent positions with good salary. Applicants must be able to use[6] the typewriter and follow dictation perfectly. Address replies to X 53, Journal Office.[7]

---

[1] use pret. subj. of mögen. [2] im Engliſchen. [3] seeks. [4] Leute. [5] (auf) engliſch. [6] write on. [7] Follow German model for whole sentence.

Zweiter Teil — Part Second.

Märchen und Sagen — Tales and Legends.

Märchen und Sagen.

A. Tiergeschichten.

1. Einleitung.

Unter den alten Germanen, wie bei den primitiven Menschen überhaupt, waren Geschichten, die von Tieren handelten, allgemein beliebt. Die einfachen Naturkinder, zum großen Teil Jäger oder Hirten, fühlten sich mit den Tieren nahe verwandt und erkannten die Vorzüge ihrer wilden Brüder an. Denn stärker als der Mensch ist der Bär, schneller der Hase, und schlauer der Fuchs. Auch der Lebenszweck beider, der Menschen und Tiere, war ungefähr derselbe, nämlich sich Nahrung zu verschaffen und sich vor Feinden zu schützen.

Diese alten Tiergeschichten oder -fabeln waren ursprünglich weder didaktisch noch satirisch; sie waren einfache Geschichten, welche die Haupteigenschaften der verschiedenen Tiere darstellten. In diesen Geschichten handeln und sprechen die Tiere wie Menschen, verkehren sogar oft mit den Menschen; doch es behält dabei jedes Tier seine charakteristische Eigenschaft. Der Bär ist immer gutmütig aber plump, der Wolf bösartig aber dumm, der Fuchs schlau, u.s.w.*

Später werden didaktische und satirische Elemente eingeflochten. Dies ist der Fall in dem bekannten Tierepos „Reineke Fuchs," welches im Mittelalter sehr beliebt war. Noch später hat sich der große Dichter Goethe für dieses Tierepos interessiert und es zu einem Nationalgedicht des deutschen Volkes gemacht.

* und so weiter.

Tales and Legends.

A. ANIMAL STORIES.

1. Introduction.

The old Teutons had many stories treating[1] of animals. Such stories are generally beloved among primitive men, who are themselves[2] children of nature. As hunters and shepherds, they often had [the] opportunity of seeing[3] their wild brothers and of appreciating their[4] superior qualities. They had often learned by experience that the bear was stronger, the hare swifter, and the fox shrewder than they themselves. Both[5] animals and[5] men seemed to have the same aim in life. This aim was to protect themselves from enemies and to procure food. Therefore the old Teutons felt closely related to the animals and liked to hear[6] animal stories.

These old fables or stories were quite simple and not at all didactic or satirical. In them[7] the animals often have dealings with (the) men, and we find that they always act and speak like (the) men, but the animals always preserve the same characteristic qualities. In all the stories the wolf is wicked but stupid, the bear good-natured but clumsy, and the fox shrewd.

In the middle ages an animal epic which is called "Reynard the Fox" was greatly beloved. This is a col-

1. [1] 32 c. [2] 49 b. [3] 32 e. [4] deren. [5] ſowohl . . . als (auch). [6] gern hören. [7] Darin.

lection of animal stories into which didactic and satirical elements had already been introduced. At a later date this epic interested the great poet Goethe, and it has now become, in the form which he gave to it, a national poem of the German people.

2. Reynard and Bruin.

Bruin the Bear was sent by Nobel the Lion, king of the beasts, as [a] messenger to summon Reynard before the court, where the latter was to defend himself after his many misdeeds. The way was long and the bear was tired as well as hungry and thirsty when he arrived before the fox's castle. The gate was locked fast, but Bruin knew that Reynard was at home. So he called out his message and ordered the fox to follow him. Otherwise it would cost Reynard his life, he added.

As soon as the fox had assured himself that the bear was alone, he came out and said, "Welcome, dear Uncle! Pardon [1] me for letting [2] you wait. I really intended to go to court [3] to-morrow. I cannot take the trip to-day, for I have eaten too much of a dish which does not agree with me." Bruin then asked what that was, and when the fox replied that it was honey, the bear said that that was his favorite dish. "O, you [1] are certainly joking," replied the fox. "No," said Bruin, and added that he would be greatly indebted to Reynard if he would be kind enough to procure him some honey. "Very well," said Reynard; "I know where a peasant lives who

---

2. [1] Use pronoun of familiar address in fables. [2] daß ich . . ., 32 b; perf. tense, 36 a, Note 3. [3] zu Hofe.

has more honey than you have seen in your whole life. I assure you that you will get enough." But Reynard was not thinking of the honey. He meant the blows of the angry peasant.

3. Reynard and Bruin (*concluded*).

So the two set out and finally came to the peasant's yard. Meanwhile it had grown dark, and the peasant had gone to bed. There lay in the yard a huge oaken tree trunk, into which the peasant, who was a carpenter, had driven two large wedges in order to split it. On the upper side the opening was already quite large.

Reynard led the bear thither and told him that there was plenty of honey in the tree. "Just stick in your head, but don't be too greedy and take too much," said he. The bear could not contain himself, and thrust into the cleft his fore-paws and his head as far as[1] his ears. As soon as the fox noticed this, he pulled out the wedges and held the bear captive. (The) poor Bruin was quite helpless. His head and paws hurt him fearfully, and he howled so loudly and scratched so much with his hind-paws that the peasant awoke and came running out[2] to see what was the matter. When he saw the bear, he called together other peasants, and (now) the whole crowd, armed[3] with stones, clubs, axes, etc., rushed[4] into the yard and began to belabor (the) poor Bruin. Meanwhile Reynard stood at a safe distance and cried out, "Don't take too much, Bruin. Just be moderate." Soon the bear could stand it no longer. Half dead, he tore his

---

3. [1] bis an (acc.). [2] 32 f. [3] comes after etc. [4] inv. order (after now).

head and paws out of the cleft by main force,[5] ran madly through the crowd, threw himself into the river and thus saved his life. When he had come to the shore again, Reynard asked him how the honey had tasted and if he had not forgotten something in his[6] haste.

4. Reynard and Isegrim.

Reynard once went walking in the country with Isegrim the Wolf. The wolf was very hungry, and, when they saw a mare with a little colt, Isegrim begged Reynard to go[1] and ask if the mare would sell the colt and at[2] what price. The mare said that she would sell it if the fox would pay enough, and added that the price was written on[3] her hind-foot. Reynard, however, who knew what the mare meant, said he could not read, returned to the wolf and told him that he had not been able to learn[4] the price because he had not been able to read[4] it.

Now the wolf went to the mare, for he could read and was not a little proud of this[5] [fact]. "How much does the colt cost?" he asked. "Please make it cheap." "The sum is written upon my hind-foot," replied the mare. "Just let me see," said Isegrim. Thereupon the mare lifted her foot from the grass. It had just been shod with six new nails. Those[6] were the figures. As Isegrim came nearer in order to read them, the mare kicked violently and struck the wolf on the head.[7] (The) poor Isegrim fell upon the ground and lay unconscious for an hour. After he had recovered, the fox came to him and asked quite

[5] mit Gewalt. [6] the.

4. [1] hingehen. [2] zu. [3] auf. [4] 36 a, Note 3. [5] darauf. [6] das. [7] auf den Kopf.

innocently where the mare was and why he had taken such a[8] long after dinner nap.

5. Reynard as Judge.

A serpent once wished to creep through a hole in a hedge before which a noose had been placed, but caught itself in the latter, and would have died if a man had not come in the nick of time. But before the man would set the serpent free, he made[1] it swear a solemn oath that it would not injure him in any manner. Then the two went on together, but soon the serpent grew very hungry and wished to devour the man. The latter reproached it with ingratitude, but the serpent justified itself with the proverb, "Necessity knows no law."[2]

The man, however, proposed that they leave the matter to a third [person] who would judge them impartially. Unfortunately they met two ravens first, and these two judges condemned the man to death because they thought that they would get something too.

But the man demanded another judge, for he considered it unjust to be condemned by robbers. Accordingly all went on together until they met the bear and the wolf. These two also asserted that hunger has no laws, and that the serpent had the right to kill the man. The latter became extremely anxious, for he perceived that the animals had determined to devour him. One possibility of escape remained. The man proposed that they go to the lion, and promised to endure his fate without a word

---

[8] ein ſo.

5. [1] laſſen. [2] Not kennt kein Gebot.

of complaint if he should lose his case again. The animals, thinking that the gentlemen of the court would speak as they had done, consented, and the whole company set out for[3] the court.

6. Reynard as Judge (*concluded*).

Arriving[1] at court, the company went immediately to the king to lay the matter before him. The man related how he had rescued the serpent from death and how the ungrateful [animal] intended to kill him. He asserted that it had completely forgotten his kindness and that it had broken its oath. The serpent, on the other hand, did not deny anything, but said that (the) all-powerful hunger had compelled it to act thus, and repeated its former assertion that necessity knows no law.

The matter seemed very difficult to the lion. If the man had not freed the serpent, the latter would have died. On the other hand, the lion had to admit the truth of the proverb that the serpent had just uttered. In his perplexity the lion sent for[2] the fox and told him that he should pronounce judgment. Reynard had[3] the opponents repeat all that[4] they had said, but pretended that[5] he could not decide which of the two was in the right unless[6] he could see exactly how the man had freed the serpent.

All went back to the place, and they bound the serpent in the same manner as it was bound when the man found

---

[3] nach.

6. [1] **32 f,** comes after court. [2] nach. [3] laſſen. [4] **19 b,** Note. [5] tun als ob. [6] es ſei denn, daß.

it "Now it is quite clear what is just," said Reynard. Thereupon he turned to the man and said that he could free the serpent from the noose again if he wished; if not, he should let it hang there. Since the serpent had shown itself faithless, the man should have the choice. This judgment pleased the king very much, and every one praised Reynard's cleverness. As a matter of course[7] the man did not set the ungrateful serpent free again.

[7] Selbſtverſtändlich.

B. Die Zwerge.

1. Einleitung.

Der lebendige, fromme Naturſinn unſerer Ahnen dachte ſich die ganze Natur, die Lüfte, die Tiefen der Erde, die Bäume und Pflanzen und die Gewäſſer belebt und beherrſcht von unſichtbaren Weſen. Dieſe Weſen ſtellten ſie ſich in menſchenähnlicher Geſtalt dar. Da man denſelben höhere Macht und Kraft zuſchrieb als dem Menſchen ſelbſt und ſich ihnen gegenüber ohnmächtig, zugleich aber von ihrem Wirken abhängig fühlte, ſo ſuchte man die überirdiſchen Weſen durch Spenden, durch Speiſe und Trank und durch Bitten ſich geneigt zu machen und ihren Beiſtand zu erlangen.

Mit dieſer Auffaſſung von der Belebtheit der Natur verband ſich aufs engſte die Überzeugung, die ſich bei allen primitiven Völkern findet, daß die Seelen der Verſtorbenen in der Natur fortleben. Das furchtbare Rätſel des Todes löſten ſich dieſe Naturkinder auf die ihnen zunächſt liegende Weiſe, indem ſie die Seelen ihrer Toten in der bewegten Luft, im Windeshauch wiederzufinden glaubten. Toben gewaltige Stürme über die Länder dahin, ſo ſind es die Scharen der Geiſter, die als „wütendes Heer“ oder als „wilde Jagd“ durch die Luft dahinſauſen. Als Geiſter der Toten dürfen ſie nur des Nachts ihr Weſen treiben. Die Zeit ihrer regſten Tätigkeit ſind die rauheſten Winternächte, die Wochen, wo die Tage am kürzeſten, die Nächte am längſten ſind und die Winterſtürme am furchtbarſten wüten. Je gewaltiger die Stürme toben, deſto fruchtbarer wird das Jahr, und wer in dieſen Tagen geboren wird, erhält die Gabe, die Geiſter zu ſehen und mit ihnen zu verkehren.

B. THE DWARFS.

1. Introduction.

Our pious ancestors had a strong feeling for nature. They imagined all nature[1] peopled by invisible beings of human form. These beings governed the breezes, the depths of the earth, the trees, the plants, and all bodies of water. To them men ascribed a superhuman might and considered themselves powerless against them, but, at the same time, dependent upon them. By means of offerings of food or drink and by prayers they therefore sought to gain their help.

They were also convinced that the souls of the dead continued to live in nature. This conception is closely connected with the thought that all nature is animated; it is found in the childhood of all peoples. They believed that the souls of the deceased were to be found[2] in the breath of the wind, for in this manner these children of nature solved the dreadful riddle of death.

Hosts of spirits rush through the air when mighty storms sweep over the land, and then one speaks of the "wild hunt." Being[3] spirits of the dead, they are permitted to be abroad only at night. In the middle of winter, when we have the shortest days, the longest nights, and the most fearful storms, they are most active, for that is the time when[4] the souls of the dead celebrate their great festival, and rush through the air in a wild chase. People[5] believed that the[6] fiercer the storms were in winter, the[7] richer would be the subsequent

---

[1] die ganze Natur. [2] 29. [3] da ſie . . ., 32b. [4] wo. [5] man. [6] je. [7] deſto.

harvests. The gift of seeing[8] and conversing with spirits was given[9] to him who[10] was born in these days.

2. Introduction (*Concluded*).

On the belief that all nature is animated is based the conception of a great host [of] elfin beings. These are active everywhere, in air and water, in wood and field, in mountain and valley, in house and yard, and are the representatives of the silent forces of nature.

Among these the dwarfs are favorite beings in (the) popular superstition, occurring[1] in countless legends and fairy tales. They dwell deep in the heart of the mountains, where they dig gold and silver. Surpassing all human artists in skill,[2] they fashion precious golden ornaments, and forge splendid weapons and wonderful vessels.

They are tiny men, usually old, with long, white beards, and dressed in coarse, gray linen, their large heads covered with a peaked cap. They usually possess a cap of darkness by which they can make themselves invisible. In the mountains they have a kingdom which is governed by kings just as human kingdoms are governed by human kings. Often one hears music faintly sounding in the valleys; then the dwarfs are celebrating some festival with dance[s] and banqueting. As guardians of the mountain depths, the dwarfs are owners of the immeasurable treasures that slumber there. They are not always helpful to mankind, but are sometimes treacherous and cruel. In the earlier legends the dwarfs are usually larger and more heroic than the little mannikins of later

[8] 32 e. [9] verleihen. [10] derjenige, der (or welcher).

2. [1] 32 a. [2] In (an) skill all human artists surpassing (use part. here).

popular superstition and of our well known fairy tales. The difference in character of the two groups of dwarfs may be recognized[3] in the following tales.

3. The Goblins.

A shoemaker had, by no fault of his own, become so poor that at last he had nothing left but leather for a single pair [of] shoes. So he cut out the shoes in the evening, intending to work at them on the next morning. And as he had a good conscience he calmly went to bed, commended himself to (the dear) God and fell asleep. On the next morning, after he had said his prayers and was about to[1] sit down to his task, he noticed a pair [of] finely worked shoes upon his table. He was astonished and did not know what to make of it.[1a] He took the shoes into his hands to examine them more closely. They were made so neatly that not a faulty stitch was to be seen in them, just as if they were intended for a[2] masterpiece. Soon after, a purchaser entered, and because he was so pleased with the shoes, he paid more than usual for them, and for the money the shoemaker was able to buy leather for two pairs of shoes. He cut them out in the evening, and expected to begin his work in the morning with new courage; but it was not necessary, for when he arose the shoes were already finished. Soon purchasers came who gave him enough money for four pairs of shoes. Thus it continued, and what he prepared in the evening he found finished in the morning, so that he soon became a rich man. Now it happened one evening shortly before Christmas,

---

[3] ſich erkennen laſſen.

3. [1] pret. of wollen. [1a] konnte es ſich gar nicht erklären. [2] zum.

when the man had cut out his shoes, that he said to his wife, "How would it be[3] if we stayed up to-night to see who lends us such a helping hand? The wife was willing and lighted a candle. Then they hid themselves behind the clothes that hung in the corners of the room, and watched attentively.

When it was midnight, there came two cunning little naked mannikins, who[4] sat down before the shoemaker's table, took up all the work that had been prepared and began to sew and hammer so quickly and skillfully with their little fingers that the shoemaker could not believe his eyes. They did not stop working[5] until everything was finished and stood complete on the table; then they ran quickly away.

The next morning the woman said: "The little men have made us rich, and we must surely show ourselves grateful for it. They run around (so) without clothing for their bodies, and must be freezing. I'll tell you what.[6] I will sew little shirts, coats, vests and trousers for them and knit a pair of stockings for each, and do you make a pair of little shoes for each one." The man said he would be glad to do it. In the evening, when everything was finished, they laid the gifts on the table instead of prepared work, and then hid themselves to see what the little men would do when they saw it. At midnight they came running in,[7] expecting[8] to work immediately, as had been their custom. When they saw instead of the leather, the cunning little articles of clothing, they were at first astonished, but then they exhibited the

---

[3] pret. subj. [4] use demonstrative pron. [5] 32 e. [6] Weißt du was! [7] 32 f. [8] 32 a.

greatest pleasure. They dressed themselves with the greatest rapidity, then they clasped hands, hopped about and danced and sprang over chairs and benches. Finally they danced out through the door.[9] From now on they came no more, but their blessing still rested on the house, for the shoemaker fared well all his life, and was successful in everything that he undertook.

4. The Dwarf Laurin and the Rose-Garden.

One day as Kunhilde, the sister of Dietleib, was playing with her maidens under a linden-tree, she was carried off by Laurin, the king of the dwarfs, and was then held captive in the Tyrolese mountains, near the famous Rose-Garden. Afterwards she was made queen[1] of the dwarfs, and nothing was lacking for her happiness[2] except her own people. The Rose-Garden was[3] surrounded by a silken thread, and was[4] guarded by Laurin himself. Any knight who ventured into the garden or plucked a single flower forfeited his left foot and his right hand.

In the City [of] Bern, Witege, one of the warriors of the famous hero Dietrich, was one day praising the unusual valor of his master. Hildebrand, the old master-of-arms of Dietrich, replied that his fame was not secure, as he had never tested his strength in an encounter with the dwarfs. He then related the tale of Laurin and the Rose-Garden. Dietrich, upon hearing this,[5] was immediately eager to undertake this new adventure, and soon set out with Witege toward the Rose-Garden.

---

[9] zur Tür hinaus-tanzen.

4. [1] zur Königen machen. [2] an (zu) ihrem Glück. [3] ſein (not pass.). [4] werden (pass. voice). [5] Als Dietrich dies hörte, hatte er . . .

When they arrived at the Rose-Garden, Witege broke off the roses or trampled them under foot and tore the silken thread asunder. Immediately Laurin appeared on horseback, in splendid clothing, and in armor that had been dipped in dragon's blood and was therefore impenetrable. He wore a girdle which gave him the strength of ten men, and his sword could cut through iron and stone, while his cap of darkness enabled him to make himself invisible whenever he wished.

A fierce encounter follows, Witege is overthrown, and Laurin is about to[5] demand the customary forfeit when Dietrich takes up the combat. But he too would have been worsted had not Hildebrand appeared, accompanied by Dietleib and Wolfhart. Hildebrand instructs Dietrich how to attack Laurin, and the dwarf is overcome when Dietrich tears away his girdle from him. Dietleib, anxious for[6] his sister, insists that peace be made, whereupon Laurin leads the knights down to his subterranean palace, a huge castle illuminated by carbuncles, diamonds and other precious stones. There they sit down to a banquet with Kunhilde and her maidens. But Laurin has mixed the wine with a sleeping potion and the knights soon succumb to it. Then they are[7] deprived of their weapons and imprisoned, death awaiting them[8] on the morrow. Dietleib has already been imprisoned alone because he would not promise Laurin to desert his companions.

At[9] midnight, when Dietrich awoke and found himself bound, his anger was[10] so hot that his breath consumed the ropes with which he was bound. Kunhilde came

---

[5] im Begriff sein. [6] besorgt um. [7] pass. voice. [8] und nun wartete ihrer der Tod. [9] zu. [10] werden.

to Dietleib, freed him and led him noiselessly to the great hall where all their arms lay. She also gave him a golden ring which would enable him to see his otherwise invisible foes. Dietleib now released his companions, and with [a] great noise they roused Laurin and his host of giants and dwarfs, routing[11] them completely after a fierce encounter. Laurin was made prisoner and carried to Bern, while the mountain and its treasures became subject to Dietrich. Kunhilde and her brother returned home, while Laurin promised to reform and swore everlasting friendship towards Dietrich.

C. HEROIC LEGENDS.

1. Lohengrin.*

The Duke of Limburg and Brabant died, leaving an only daughter, Elsa. On his deathbed he committed her to [the charge of] Frederick of Telramund, a valorous but unscrupulous knight. After the death of the duke, Frederick claimed the hand of Elsa, asserting that it had been promised him, and when she refused it, he appealed to the emperor, Henry the Fowler, asking permission to assert his rights in the lists against any champion whom Elsa might select.

Permission was granted him, and the duchess looked in vain for a knight who would fight in her cause against the redoubted Frederick of Telramund.

---

[11] 32 a.

* Taken with slight variations from S. Baring-Gould's "Curious Myths of the Middle Ages." Upon this version of the story of the Knight of the Swan is based Wagner's Lohengrin.

Then far away, in the sacred temple of the Grail at Montsalvatsch, tolled the bell untouched by human hands, a signal that help was needed. At once Lohengrin, the son of Parsifal, was chosen for the adventure, but whither to go he knew not. He stood with his foot in the stirrup, ready to mount his horse, when a swan appeared on the river, drawing[1] a little boat. No sooner[2] did Lohengrin behold this, than[2] he exclaimed: "Take back the horse to the stable; I will go with the bird whither it shall lead."

Full of trust in God, he took no provision on board. After he had been on the water five days, the swan caught a fish, ate half of it, and gave the other half to the knight.

In the meantime the day of ordeal approached, and Elsa was in despair. But at the hour when the lists were opened, appeared the boat drawn by the silvery swan; and in the little vessel Lohengrin lay asleep upon his shield. The swan drew the boat to the landing, the knight awoke, sprang ashore, and then the bird swam away with the ship.

As soon as he heard the story of the misfortunes of the Duchess Elsa, Lohengrin undertook[3] to fight for her. The knight of the Grail prevailed and slew Telramund, whereupon Elsa surrendered herself and her duchy to him. But Lohengrin would accept her hand only on condition that she would not question him in regard to[4] his origin. For some time[5] they lived together very happily. One day the knight of the Grail, in a tournament, overthrew the Duke of Cleves, whereat the

1. [1] 32 c. [2] Kaum . . . ſo. [3] supply es. [4] über. [5] eine Zeit lang.

Duchess of Cleves exclaimed: "This Lohengrin may be a strong man and a Christian, but who knows whence he comes?" These words reached the ears of the Duchess of Brabant; she colored and hung her head.

At night Lohengrin heard her sobbing and asked: "My love, what ails thee?" She replied, "The Duchess of Cleves has wounded me." Lohengrin asked no more.

The next night she wept again; her husband asked[6] the reason and received the same answer.

On the third night she exclaimed: "Dear husband, do not be angry, but I must know what your origin is."

Then Lohengrin, in great grief, told her that his father was Parsifal, and that God had sent him from the custody of the Holy Grail. And he called his children to him, and said, kissing them: "Here are my horn and sword, keep them carefully; and here, my wife, is the ring my mother gave me — never part with it."

Now at the break of day the swan reappeared on the river with the little vessel. Lohengrin re-entered the boat and departed,[7] never to return.

2. Hildebrand and Hadubrand.

Hildebrand was the most faithful knight of Dietrich of Bern, and the master and his gray old master-of-arms were as son and father. When Dietrich was compelled to flee from[1] King Odoaker, Hildebrand followed him into (the) banishment and remained with him thirty years at the

---

[6] supply nach. [7] supply um.

2. [1] vor.

court of the Hunnic king, Attila.[2] This he did although he had to leave a young wife and infant son in his native land. Finally the two decided to return, and left Attila's court. On the way home, Hildebrand heard much of his young son Hadubrand, who had not[3] become of age until long[3] after his father's flight. The father was naturally full [of a] desire to see his son and begged Dietrich for permission to ride on ahead to the city [of] Bern.

When Hildebrand had arrived at the boundary of the land, he found a young knight guarding[4] the way. The latter was at the head of a small army and seemed to have the intention of preventing[5] his entrance. Hildebrand saw that he had to fight, but before he prepared himself for the fray, he stopped his horse and asked the youth what his name was. "I am Hadubrand, the son of Hildebrand," answered the latter proudly. "My father was the best of Dietrich's warriors." Thereupon the aged Hildebrand made himself known, saying that he himself was this Hildebrand, and offering his son golden bracelets. But trustworthy men had informed Hadubrand of his father's death, and he replied: "I receive no presents from a treacherous Hun. If I did not know that my father is dead, you could perhaps persuade me. That is, however, in vain now. You wish to disarm me by your false words and then attack me. You are a coward and dare not fight honorably." This was too much. Never before had anyone reproached Hildebrand with lying and cowardice. His knightly honor conquered his fatherly joy, and he decided to fight even if he had to kill his own son or be killed by him. "I

---

[2] Etzel. [3] erſt lange. [4] 32 c. [5] 32 e.

see the fray is unavoidable," he cried to his opponent. "He would truly be a coward who refused to fight with you now. But God knows how unwillingly I draw my sword against you."

The two knights were armed with spears, swords and shields. After they had hurled the spears, they ran at[6] each other and began to hew with their swords. Both fought bravely, but the strong and experienced Hildebrand was more than a match for his son.[7] After he had wounded him severely, he threw himself upon him with fearful force. The son fell upon the ground and saw the father's sword-point before his breast. Now the father asked again if his opponent really was Hadubrand and told the youth that he must reply immediately if he wished to preserve his life. When Hadubrand assured him that he was the son of the old hero, Hildebrand surveyed the young man with joyful pride and then lifted him up from the ground and kissed him. "Let us mount our horses and return home," said Hadubrand; "we will act[8] as if you were my prisoner." Thus Hadubrand brought his father home to his mother, who did not recognize her husband in the supposed prisoner. When Hadubrand seated the old hero at the head of the table, she told her son that he had shown the prisoner too much honor. But as she was about to drain her goblet of wine, she noticed a ring which the hero had dropped into it during [the course of] the meal. When she recognized this ring, which she had given to her husband many years before,[9] she knew that the old warrior was no captive, but her husband who had returned at last. She had

[6] auf. [7] seinem Sohne überlegen. [8] tun. [9] vor vielen Jahren.

long wept for him as dead, but now the family was united again and the joy of all was indescribable.

D. PARAPHRASES OF POEMS.

1. Die Weiber von Winsperg.

Der erſte Hohenſtaufe, der König Konrad lag
Mit Heeresmacht vor Winsperg, ſeit manchem langen Tag;
Der Welfe war geſchlagen, noch wehrte ſich das Neſt,
Die unverzagten Städter, die hielten es noch feſt.

Der Hunger kam, der Hunger! das iſt ein ſcharfer Dorn;
Nun ſuchten ſie die Gnade, nun fanden ſie den Zorn.
„Ihr habt mir hier erſchlagen gar manchen Degen wert,
Und öffnet ihr die Tore, ſo trifft euch doch das Schwert.“

Da ſind die Weiber kommen: „Und muß es alſo ſein,
Gewährt uns freien Abzug, wir ſind von Blute rein.“
Da hat ſich vor den Armen des Helden Zorn gekühlt,
Da hat ein ſanft Erbarmen im Herzen er gefühlt.

„Die Weiber mögen abziehn und jede habe frei
Was ſie vermag zu tragen und ihr das Liebſte ſei;
Laßt ziehn mit ihrer Bürde ſie ungehindert fort,
Das iſt des Königs Meinung, das iſt des Königs Wort.“

Und als der frühe Morgen im Oſten kaum gegraut,
Da hat ein ſeltnes Schauſpiel vom Lager man geſchaut;
Es öffnet leiſe, leiſe ſich das bedrängte Tor,
Es ſchwankt ein Zug von Weibern mit ſchwerem Schritt hervor

Tief beugt die Laſt ſie nieder, die auf dem Nacken ruht,
Sie tragen ihre Eh'herrn, das iſt ihr liebſtes Gut.

„Halt an die argen Weiber!" ruft drohend mancher Wicht;
Der Kanzler ſpricht bedeutſam: „Das war die Meinung nicht."

Da hat, wie er's vernommen, der fromme Herr gelacht:
„Und war es nicht die Meinung, ſie haben's gut gemacht;
Geſprochen iſt geſprochen, das Königswort beſteht
Und zwar von keinem Kanzler zerdeutelt und zerdreht."

So war das Gold der Krone wohl rein und unentweiht,
Die Sage ſchallt herüber, aus halbvergeßner Zeit.
Im Jahr elfhundert vierzig, wie ich's verzeichnet fand,
Galt Königswort noch heilig im deutſchen Vaterland.

Chamiſſo.

1. The Women of Winsperg.*

In the year 1140, King Konrad, the first of the Hohenstaufens, besieged the city of Winsperg with his army. Duke Welf had been defeated, but had taken refuge in the city, and the little place had already defended itself for many a long day. The townspeople were undismayed and had sworn to hold the little town. Finally, however, hunger came and they had to seek mercy. But they had slain many a valued warrior, and the king swore that he would have[1] all the inhabitants killed even if they opened the gates. Then the women went to the king and begged permission to withdraw freely from the town, since they were clear of blood. The king's wrath cooled, he felt compassion in his heart, and he promised the women that they might withdraw unhin-

[1] laſſen.

*In a similar way make a free prose rendition of other poems which you may know; for example: Die Lorelei, Die Grenadiere, and Die Wallfahrt nach Kevlaar by Heine.

dered, and that each [one] might carry with her what was dearest to her.

The next morning, as it began to grow gray in the east, the gates opened gently and a long procession of women staggered forward. A strange spectacle it was to look upon, for each woman carried her husband, and the heavy burden which rested on her back bowed her down and made her steps heavy. Many knights in the camp called out threateningly, "Stop the deceitful women!" and the chancellor said that such[2] had not been the king's intention. The latter, however, laughed and said that the women had acted shrewdly, and that the king's word must endure without being misinterpreted and distorted by a chancellor.

Such is the legend which echoes over to us from a half-forgotten time, a time when a royal word was still considered sacred in the German fatherland.

---

[2] that.

Dritter Teil — Part Third.

Deutſches Leben und deutſche Sitten.
German Life and Customs.

DAS DEUTSCHE REICH
NORD SEE
OST SEE
DÄNEMARK
SCHWEDEN
RÜGEN
HELGOLAND
NIEDERLANDE
Amsterdam
Rotterdam
BELGIEN
Brüssel
Aachen
Köln
Bonn
Düsseldorf
Koblenz
Frankfurt
Mainz
Metz
LOTHRINGEN
ELSASS
FRANKREICH
BAYERN
Heidelbg.
Stuttgart
Strassburg
BADEN
WÜRTEMBERG
Nürnberg
München
Oberammergau
BAYERN
SCHWEIZ
TIROL
ÖSTERREICH
Donau
Zugspitze
Rhein
Main
Weser
Elbe
Havel
Spree
Oder
Weichsel
Riesen
Gebirge
Saale
Thüringer Wald
Harz
Kiel
Lübeck
Cuxhaven
Hamburg
Bremen
Hannover
Magdeburg
Göttingen
Stralsund
Stettin
BERLIN
Potsdam
Halle
Leipzig
Dresden
Kösen
Jena
Weimar
Naumburg
Danzig
Königsberg
Posen
Breslau
Warschau
POLEN
PREUSSEN
SACHSEN

German Life and Customs.

A. THE GERMAN EMPIRE.

1. Boundaries, Rivers, and Mountains.

Germany lies in the middle of Europe, bounded on the north[1] by the Baltic and North Sea, and by Denmark, which lies between the two. To the east[2] lies Russia; to the south lie Austria and Switzerland. On the western boundary are found three countries. Farthest to the south is France, farthest to the north, the Netherlands; between the two lies Belgium.

The area of Germany is 540,678 sq. kil.; that is, Germany is about one fifteenth [as large as] (of) the United States of America without Alaska, or about as large as the state [of] Texas. Yet in 1905 there were 60,641,278 inhabitants living in this comparatively small territory, or

---

1. [1] Im Norden begrenzt. [2] Im Osten.

Questions upon Map.

1. Wo liegt Deutschland? 2. Geben Sie die Grenzen Deutschlands an! 3. Wie viele und welche Länder begrenzen Deutschland im Westen? 4. Nennen sie die! 5. Wie viele Meere an der Nordgrenze? 6. Nennen sie diese! 7. Was ist Helgoland? 8. Beschreiben Sie den Flußlauf der Elbe! 9. der Weser! 10. Welche Flüsse münden auf deutschem Gebiet? 11. Wo mündet der Rhein? 12. Was ist der Harz? 13. Wo liegt das Riesengebirge? 14. Nennen Sie die wichtigsten Städte in Deutschland! 15. Welche Städte liegen an der Elbe? 16. Welche am Rhein? 17. Wo liegt Berlin, Bremen, Königsberg? 18. In welcher Richtung fährt man von Leipzig nach Halle? 19. Nennen Sie eine Großstadt im Süden!

about two-thirds as many as in the United States. No wonder, then, that so many Germans emigrate to America.

The most important rivers in Germany are: the Vistula, the Oder, the Elbe, the Weser, the Rhine and the Danube. Of these all except the Danube flow in a northerly direction, and only this river and the Weser have their sources in German territory. Best known of all is the Rhine, which rises in Switzerland, flows through the western part of Germany, and empties into the North Sea in Dutch territory. These rivers are all navigable, at least for vessels of light draught, and, together with the numerous canals, form important commercial highways.

The most famous German mountain ranges are: the Harz Mountains, which lie in about the middle of Germany; the Thuringian Forest, southward from them; the celebrated Black Forest in the southwestern corner of the empire; and the Giant Mountains, which form a part of the southern boundary between Germany and Austria. In Southern Bavaria one finds still higher ranges, for here the Tyrolese Alps begin. One of these peaks, the rugged Zugspitze, 2900 meters high, is the highest mountain in all Germany.

The climate is milder than that of the state [of] New York, warmer in the winter and cooler in the summer. And yet Germany lies much farther to the north than the United States. For example, the parallel of Berlin traverses the bleak waste of Labrador and cuts through the southern part of Hudson Bay.

The northern part of Germany is very flat, and does

not lie much above the sea. Central Germany has[1] also no great elevation, although some districts are somewhat mountainous and very beautiful. But South Germany, especially in the neighborhood of the Alps, has far more variety of scenery, and some of the mountains, for example the above-mentioned Zugspitze, reach a height of nearly three thousand meters.

2. Cities and States.

Berlin, the capital of Germany, lies in the central part of the empire. The great commercial cities, Hamburg and Bremen, are[2] in the northwest corner, the one on the Elbe and the other on the Weser. Quite in the south is found[2] Munich. On the Elbe, close to the Bohemian boundary, is[2] the beautiful city of Dresden. Farther to the northwest is Leipzig, the center of the book trade. Not far northwest of Leipzig is the university town of Halle, to the southwest, the university town of Jena. In western Germany are many celebrated cities on the Rhine and near it. East of the Belgian city of Brussels is Cologne-on-the-Rhine with its magnificent cathedral; then come Bonn, Koblenz, Mayence, and, not far distant, Frankfort-on-the-Main; still farther south, Heidelberg-on-the-Neckar, and Strassburg with another famous minster.

The German Empire consists of a union of twenty-five states and the imperial land, Alsace-Lorraine, which is administered by the imperial government. Of these, the kingdom of Prussia in the north, with Berlin as its capital, has the greatest number of inhabitants. The

[1] erreichen. [2] Use liegen throughout this paragraph.

kingdom of Bavaria in the south is the second largest German state; its capital, Munich, is far famed as a center of art and literature. Between these two states lies the kingdom of Saxony, with Dresden as its capital. There is also a fourth kingdom, Württemberg, which is, however, less important than the ones named above.

These states, and the twenty-one others also, have retained their constitutions, but they have entrusted the supreme direction of military* and political† affairs of the Empire to the King of Prussia, who, being the head of all the united states, is called the German Emperor. All questions that concern the whole German Empire are decided by the federal government. This is administered by the Emperor, the federal council, the members of which are appointed for each session by the governments of the individual states, and the "Reichstag," the members of which are elected by[3] universal suffrage.

3. Germany's Place among the Nations.

Germany has always played an important part in (the) European politics.[1] Long before there was[2] a German nation, the ancestors of the modern Germans created and dethroned Roman emperors and founded kingdoms through all Europe. Even Charlemagne, whom the old French minstrels celebrate in their songs, was a German. Not until after the treaty of Verdun, however, in the year 843, did [there] exist an independent German state.

In the Middle Ages Germany was prosperous, success-

---

[3] on the basis of.

3. [1] Sing. [2] geben.

* in case of war. † as chief executive.

ful in war, and advanced in art and literature. Then came a long period of (the) decay and (the) weakness, especially in the century of [the] religious controversy which followed the Reformation. The Thirty Years' War, in the first half of the seventeenth century, almost annihilated the nation, and it was[3] long before the land fully recovered from it. At the beginning of the nineteenth century Germany had to submit to the great Napoleon, but a few years later aided materially in conquering[4] the conqueror. From this time on, under the leadership of Prussia,[5] Germany has taken great strides forward. The Franco-Prussian war in 1870 showed the world to what a military power Germany had developed.[6] Since that time the German army has been a model for all nations, even for China and Japan. Before 1866 Germany was a loose confederation of independent states. Since the Franco-Prussian War, however, it has been a closely welded union under the leadership of Prussia, with the king of Prussia as head of the whole empire.

But not only in war does Germany occupy a prominent place among the nations. Germany is especially prominent in the field of thought. What a tremendous influence the German philosophers, composers and poets have had upon modern thought and culture! The German universities and conservatories [of music] are world-famed; in every German city of importance one finds strangers from all the four quarters of the world, who have come to make use of the excellent advantages which these institutions offer.

In the world of industry and commerce, too, Germany

---

[3] dauern. [4] 32 e. [5] 46 a, 2. [6] reflexive verb.

is swiftly overtaking her rivals. With [the] exception of England, Germany has the greatest merchant marine of the world. Not England, but Germany will be the rival of the United States in the East, if the great steamship companies of Hamburg and Bremen continue their wonderful development.

Moreover, the Germans are diligently cultivating all branches of industry, and Germany can already be considered as one of the foremost nations in respect to its output of manufactures.

For many reasons, therefore, Germany is entitled to be considered one of the greatest world-powers and (it) offers to the other nations an interesting and instructive object of study.

B. PICTURES OF GERMAN LIFE.

1. A German City in the year 1300.

In the fourteenth century, the German city is still surrounded by forest and heath, by marsh and pond. A wall and moat immediately around the city serve as [a] defense. Behind the wall are seen [1] the many large and small spires of the city. These look closely crowded from a distance, as they belong not only [2] to churches and the town-hall, but also [2] to ancient fortresses, or to an old inner wall which separates the older part of the city from the newer. These towers are either round or square, of uneven height and thickness, and in a rich city are covered with slate or tiles, and ornamented with metal balls. All the larger gates are double; about the outer gates stands a large tower; behind it, the bridge lies over the

1. [1] one sees. [2] nicht nur . . . ſondern auch.

wide city moat, in which fish are kept. Outside the city, in airy places, windmills are seen [3] turning their wings, and where a brook runs through the meadow, the wheels of the watermill clatter. On a little rise stands the city gallows, where black crows fly about shapeless bundles.

If one enters the city in the morning, one is sure to meet [4] the cattle first. In the streets the cows are trotting and a shepherd and his dog are leading sheep to the neighboring heights. The pigs cause a great deal of trouble by running [5] into the houses in search of [6] their unclean nourishment. Occasionally the city council has to forbid the building of pigpens on the street. Large flights of pigeons rise from the street, for these birds are favorites of the citizens, and rare species are much sought after. Heaps of manure lie about in out-of-the-way places, and when the city prepares for the visit of an emperor or for a great fair, it has this carried away from the streets and squares, and also has the bodies of criminals removed from the gallows.

The main streets of the city are paved here and there, but often they are very bad. When the dirt is too deep, the citizens put on heavy wooden shoes. If a festival, a joust, or a play is held in a square, this square is covered with straw. In the streets are many wells, with roller and chain and two pails. If good water is lacking, pains are taken [6] to lead pure springs and brooks into the town. The streets differ from modern streets in being narrow and winding.

The houses are usually small, built of wood, covered

---

[3] one sees. [4] one surely meets. [5] dadurch, daß ſie . . . laufen. [6] auf der Suche nach. [6] man bemüht ſich.

with straw, and provided with gables. Over the door hangs a shield with the sign of the house painted upon it, and often the owner of the house is named after his sign. An upper story projects over the lower floor, a second [one] over the first, and from the upper story, bay windows and balconies project still farther into the street. In this way the upper stories of opposite houses approach each other, and the light is so much shut off below that it is sometimes found necessary to forbid the building of balconies. On the street below, booths, shops, and sheds are built on to the front of the ground floor. In some cities the upper stories are supported by pillars so that a covered walk is formed. In the construction of buildings one sees of what slight importance private life is in comparison with the life of the community. For between herds and straw roofs rise magnificent cathedrals, gigantic, artistic structures in which the citizens show with pride what money and work can do.[7] Numerous are the houses of worship, for besides the large cathedrals there are[8] smaller churches and chapels, and also several monasteries, shut off, perhaps, by walls.

The court-house is also beautiful, but between it and the cathedral is a pool of water, the "fire pond," with ducks [swimming] upon it, and next to it[9] is the German village tree, the old linden, reminding[10] the citizens of[11] the time when[12] there was[13] yet no city.

2. A Modern German City.

A modern German city presents a quite different picture from the city described in the previous chapter.[1] To

[7] vermögen. [8] geben. [9] daneben. [10] 32 c. [11] an. [12] wo. [13] geben. 2. [1] 42.

be sure, some of the older cities and some parts of the more modern [ones] still preserve the crooked, narrow streets and the quaint houses. But, in general, the modern German cities, especially Berlin, are famous for[2] their broad, clean streets, their splendid lighting, the excellent facilities for transportation, and the extensive and well-kept parks.

As there are strict building laws, no "sky-scrapers" are found[3] in the business portions of the city. On the other hand, even the streets in the suburbs contain high houses built close together,[4] for few families possess a house and garden, and the majority of the Germans dwell in apartments. Only in the suburbs, where the wealthy reside, does one find single houses surrounded by gardens. These houses are generally called villas.

Electric cars ply[5] through the city, and innumerable cabs are at the service of even the humbler citizens. Everywhere are seen (the) smartly dressed policemen, without whom a German city is not to be thought [of]. In certain cities the old walls have been razed and in their place are parks which surround the inner town. Here the worthy citizens walk on Sundays and in the evenings. Generally, however, they take longer walks in the parks which are found[3] in the suburbs or at a short distance from the city. Everywhere are[6] restaurants and concert-gardens, where one may hear good music while eating[7] supper.

The old cathedrals from[8] the Middle Ages still remain unsurpassed by the numerous but less magnificent churches of modern construction. Here and there in the

---

[2] wegen. [3] 24 b. [4] 42. [5] fahren. [6] geben. [7] während, 32 b. [8] aus.

city one sees schools and theatres and, in the important squares, monuments to[9] favorite rulers or heroes. In few cities is there lacking[10] a monument to the beloved Emperor Wilhelm I, or to Bismarck, the man of blood and iron, to whom Germany is indebted for[11] its unification.

C. GERMAN STUDENT-LIFE.

1. The German Gymnasium.*

Among the different so-called higher [secondary] schools in Germany, the gymnasium occupies the first place. This is due,[1] not to the number of its students, for only a small percentage of young Germans complete its course,[2] but to its splendid training and to the fact that, until recently, access to the learned professions and higher posts in (the) civil service could be obtained only by those who had successfully passed the final examination of the gymnasium.[3]

The gymnasium has the purpose of training[4] men who shall be able[5] to think clearly on the basis of sound knowledge, to recognize and cultivate their peculiar[6] talents, and to appreciate the beautiful and the great.

The instruction is mainly humanistic, (whereby) the chief weight being laid[7] upon Latin, Greek and German in the [regular] gymnasium; upon Latin, (the) modern

---

[9] von. [10] fehlen. [11] verdanken.

1. [1] dies verdankt es. [2] es durchmachen. [3] das Abiturientenexamen. [4] 32 e. [5] pres. [6] beſonder. [7] pass. voice.

* For a comprehensive and detailed account of secondary education, cf. Russell, German Higher Schools.

languages, and the sciences in the "Real-Gymnasium." But the gymnasium does not foster narrow specialists, and the gymnasium-students have general interests and an ability to discuss the most diverse subjects [such] as is seldom found among the students of our colleges.

The aim of the gymnasium is, accordingly, a general scientific training. The curriculum is fixed by the government, although considerable liberty is left to the individual schools and teachers in the choice of the material for teaching, and in the [8] presentation [of it]. This centralization makes possible a uniformity of work which could not otherwise be attained.

The strength of the gymnasium system, however, lies in [9] the ability of the teachers. Before they are permitted to give instruction in the gymnasium, they must have passed a special state examination which demands about one year more [of work] than [does] the [degree of] Doctor of Philosophy. Even then they are not permanently employed until they have shown, in "trial years," that they are successful pedagogs.

The gymnasium has a course of nine years. Scholars are admitted at the age of nine (years), after having [10] had three years' instruction in reading, writing, arithmetic and religion.

These nine years are years of sharp discipline and careful supervision. (The) instruction begins at seven in summer and eight in winter, and there is [11] no cutting or coming late. The supervision of the gymnasium does not end with the departure of the pupil from the school building. He must obey the regulations, no matter

[8] its. [9] beruht auf. [10] nachdem fie, 32 b. [11] es gibt.

where he[12] may be, and is not permitted to do certain things, for example, to visit a restaurant, except in (the) company of adults.

Discipline is easily enforced, for the military spirit pervades all Germany, and the smallest boys are accustomed to obey. Many of the teachers are officers in the "Reserves," and infuse a military spirit into the life in the school-room. There is[13] less fun and far more seriousness among the gymnasium students than one finds in English and American schools. Even in the recesses one seldom sees the students playing. The older students walk gravely about together discussing even social or political problems, or new works in literature or art, or things of that nature.[14]

Certainly they are deprived of[15] many [of the] pleasures of youth by this system, but gain[16] years in[17] time and acquire well-trained minds,[18] minds which really have learned [how] to think. After the nine years of preparatory training in the gymnasium, the student is ready to enter the university, where three more years suffice to give him the doctor's degree. It is quite possible, therefore, for a German student to obtain the Ph.D.[19] at the age of twenty-one. As a rule, however, the students spend more time at the university, and the average age at graduation is, perhaps, twenty-four.

In Germany there is no institution between the gymnasium and the university which corresponds to the American college. But the last two years of the gymnasium and similar German schools are equal to at least

---

[12] wo er auch. [13] es gibt. [14] derartiges. [15] miss. [16] gewinnen aber. [17] an. [18] sing. (with indef. art.). [19] Dr. phil. (Doktor der Philosophie).

the first two years of the American college, and in some respects the average gymnasium student who has successfully passed his final examination has a better mental equipment[20] than the student who has gone through[21] the American college.

2. The German University.

If the German gymnasium stands for[1] the strictest discipline and the closest attention to required studies, the German university is, on the other hand, the ideal of academic freedom in the choice of studies, in the work itself, and in freedom of personal life.

The gymnasium student must attend his class unless he has a very valid excuse. The university student need never appear in the lecture-room if he does not wish to. All lecture courses are elective, and the student may choose as much or as little as pleases him. For the moment, he need not trouble himself about examinations. Whether he will try his examination after three years, or after ten, depends wholly upon himself. In the meantime he is the freest citizen in the German Empire. At some universities, even if he should be arrested, at least for a minor offence, he need only show his student-card and then the policeman would take leave of him politely and refer his case to the University Judge.

This academic freedom of the German university is sometimes misused. But most students have learned to work conscientiously at the gymnasium, have come to the university with mature and critical comprehension;

[20] geiſtige Ausrüſtung. [21] abſolvieren; durch=machen.

2. [1] vertreten.

and these students can develop much better in this free atmosphere than if they were still to be bound in the future by petty rules in study and conduct. They are treated as men, and if they do not prove themselves to be[2] men, so much the worse for them. In any case they would not have amounted to anything.[3]

Once at the university, the student has the opportunity to hear the greatest thinkers of his fatherland. He is encouraged to free himself from all prejudices, narrow views, and antiquated dogmas. Moreover he has abundant opportunity to hear and see the best in music and the drama. Seats in the theatre and concert hall are reserved for him at greatly reduced rates. If he wishes to take in summer a tramp through the mountains, in many hotels he can obtain rooms at reduced rates.

The chief advantage for the student is of course the inspiration which he receives from the great men whom he hears daily; for the German student does attend his lectures[4] even if that is not required. He soon begins to think of his dissertation; for a satisfactory work, based on original investigation, must be submitted by him before he is permitted to present himself[5] for his examination. This dissertation is the principal thing in the student's real university training. In writing[6] it he learns to work scientifically, to find the books[7] he needs, and to use them when he has found them, to weigh the thoughts of others, and to think independently for himself.

And now the dissertation is accepted and he is summoned to his examination. Three subjects, in which he

---

[2] that they are. [3] nichts wäre aus ihnen geworden. [4] insert doch after lectures. [5] ſich ſtellen (zu). [6] indem er, 32 b. [7] 19 a.

has specialized, have been chosen by him, and he must submit himself to oral examinations of one hour each [8] in these subjects. How many questions one can put in an hour! Now is disclosed [9] whether the student has made good use of [10] his time or whether he has abused his academic freedom. For weeks [11] before the examination, the student is the picture of despair. His friends see him only when he comes to his meals, and then he looks preoccupied and can hardly force a smile. Upon the last day he does not even [12] appear among his friends.

And then the ordeal is over and the successful candidate is again a human being. "I congratulate you, Doctor," he hears on all sides. He invites his best friends to a "Doktor-Kneipe," and from early evening until far into the night the successful completion of his academic life is celebrated.

3. The Last Day at the Gymnasium.

"Then fare thee well, Gymnasium,
I leave thee without sadness." [1]

We could not get this song out of our heads [2] as we betook ourselves, for the last time, to the gymnasium. For the last time our gay caps adorned us. For who would wear this badge of servitude after the examination? The houses looked so strong in the spring sunshine — but we could flunk even in [3] this fine weather.

---

[8] je eine Stunde. [9] it comes out (heraus). [10] ausnützen. [11] Wochenlang. [12] nicht einmal.

3. [1] So leb' denn wohl, Gymnasium,
Ich scheide ohne Trauern.

[2] the head, 14. [3] auch bei.

And it was with considerable anxiety that we entered that old box, the gymnasium. The school had a holiday in our honor.[4] But where were our friends? Ah! they were surely still asleep.

And now we have reached the gymnasium and the old janitor has shown us into the Sexta. Was that the old room where we had had our first lesson nine years ago? How small and narrow! And there was the same huge ink-spot on the map, just in the middle of Saxony.

We all started up.[5] The whole corps of teachers[6] appeared, with the director and the mayor and the entire body of school inspectors. And now the judgment could commence.

The mayor began: "As royal commissioner,"—thunder, how proud that sounded!—"and chairman of the examination committee, I have to inform you that the examination papers of Müller, Kurth, Weissker and Krause are excellent and that they are excused from the oral examination. I congratulate you." "Krause?" And so I [was excused] too. Then it was all over. [I was] free!

And now we sauntered through the old halls. But the poor fellows in there! How they must be perspiring! Horace and Demosthenes! And Müller, No. 2,[7] will surely flunk in mathematics. They must be through at twelve and then we are to be here again.

How swiftly the hours passed! At home they would scarcely believe that this was the end. Kurth had told his grandmother that he had not been admitted to the ex-

---

[4] uns zu Ehren. [5] in die Höhe ſchnellen. [6] Lehrerſchar. [7] Müller II (zwei).

amination,[8] and the poor old lady had almost had hysterics, and now she would hardly believe the truth.

At twelve we returned to the gymnasium. With what pride we wore the free man's hat.[9] Little Müller[10] was even smoking. There stood the whole Prima before the gate. "Gratulamur," it went from mouth to mouth. And we shook each other's[11] hands. The old janitor stood behind the door and whispered to us that the others had got through. With a general murmur of joy we reentered the room. Müller was still perspiring. And the blackboard was covered with a confusion of parabola and hyperbola;—and there, in the corner, the old binomial theorem. Poor fellow!

And now the mayor addressed us: "My dear young friends, I congratulate you. The examination committee can testify with an easy conscience that you have not spent your years at the gymnasium without success. I wish that you may take life[12] as earnestly as your school-time, and that you may always be as successful as to-day. I congratulate you that you have worked so faithfully here, for the more earnestly[13] you have worked here, all the freer[13] and easier will it be for you to solve the hard problem of life, to do your duty when no one but your conscience compels and guides you. I wish you happiness and success in life and beg you not to forget your Alma Mater." And through the open window resounded the hurra[s] of our comrades.

---

[8] zurückſtellen (perf. pass.). [9] Männerhut. [10] 11 e. [11] uns die. [12] 11 d. [13] je ernſter . . . um ſo freier, etc.

4. My first Room.

I arrived in Leipzig yesterday morning at 10 o'clock. I should have been here day before yesterday if I had not interrupted the journey in order to visit my friend Busse in Magdeburg. It seemed as if the whole train had been full of students, for the platform was crowded with young men who all had an academic air. Many of them were old students who had come to meet old friends or welcome new acquaintances. Everywhere the gay caps of the fraternity students were to be seen. I left my baggage at the station and then went at once to the University to get my bearings. On the way I noticed that many of the older students examined me from head to foot,[1] and that they exchanged glances then as if they wished to say, "A new freshman — what do you think[2] of him?"

At the University I found a great crowd of students eagerly engaged in studying the notices on the bulletin-board, and in taking down addresses of rooms. I made a list of about twenty of the most desirable, then began to saunter through the streets to examine the location of these. Most of the rooms, the prices of which corresponded to the condition of my purse, were on the third or fourth floor, so I did not look at them unless the neighborhood was especially attractive. Even then I was unsuccessful[3] all morning. Either the landlady made a bad impression, or the furniture was unsatisfactory, or the light was poor. By noon I was pretty tired from all

---

4. [1] von Kopf zu Fuß, or vom Scheitel bis zur Sohle. [2] halten. [3] keinen Erfolg haben.

the stair-climbing, so I made a pause of an hour and had a good dinner.[4]

With renewed strength I continued the search. Now my way led me through the finer parts of the town, past the Johanna Park and through the Ferdinand Rhode Strasse. All at once my eye was struck[5] by a "Rooms to Rent" card in one of the windows in the second story of a corner house. At the same time I became aware of a girl's head with brown locks, which, however, disappeared upon my[6] looking more closely at the window. I must take a look at this room, I thought, even if it is not on my list. I wonder[7] if the girl is the landlady's daughter. In a moment a whole romance had been played[8] in my heart. Soon I had sprung up the stairs and rung [the bell] and was waiting with heart beating expectantly. A trim maid led me into the reception-room and then brought in her mistress. The latter was a woman in the forties, still handsome, and with something distinguished in her whole appearance. When I told her that I wished to look at the room, she said she hoped I would excuse its disorder, as she and her daughter had just been sewing there. Of course I said that that made no difference, whereupon she led me into the room, a large, cheerful corner-room, in which the girl, whom I had seen, sat sewing at one of the windows. "This is my daughter Elsa," she said, introducing me. I told her that I hoped that I was not disturbing them, that I had seen their card, and that the house pleased me on account of its pleasant and quiet location. While we were concluding the business

[4] aß gut zu Mittag. [5] Blick wurde gefeſſelt. [6] als ich. [7] Ich möchte wohl wiſſen. [8] ſich abſpielen.

of renting the room, I was examining the furniture, which, though simple, was quite satisfactory. Frau Schulze, for that was her name, told me that this was the first time that she had ever rented a room, and that she would not do it now if it were not necessary in order to pay the expenses of her son who now was serving his year in the army.

On the whole I am much pleased with my new quarters and with mother and daughter. To be sure the romance hasn't begun yet, but the chairs and bed are comfortable, and the coffee and rolls which I got this morning are good; and that is probably more important for the present.

5. "Rushing" the Freshman.[1]

This afternoon, on returning to my room from a walk, I found an invitation to a meeting of the "Neuphilologische Verein," which was to take place that evening. As I well knew, these scientific societies are not considered to be so distinguished as the "Corps" and "Burschenschaften"; but as I am opposed to the duel on principle, and as the other societies have the reputation of wasting time and money, I was pleased at the possibility of becoming a member of the Verein. Moreover my specialty was to be Literature and Philology, so I couldn't possibly join a society where I could find more help and inspiration.

While I sat considering the matter, there came a knock at my door and the maid showed in two pleasant appearing young men. They asked me if they had the

5. [1] Füchsefeteilen.

honor of speaking with Mr. Krause, and explained that they were members of the "Neuphilologische Verein" and that they had come to add a personal invitation to the written one. It would give them the greatest pleasure if it would be possible for me to attend their meeting this evening.

I thanked them for their invitation and assured them that I appreciated it, and that I should be pleased to come. "Perhaps you will permit us to call for you then," said the one who acted as spokeman. "Or still better, if you have nothing else to do, we might spend the afternoon and eat supper together, and then go to the meeting." In a few minutes we were engaged in a "Bummel" through the town. The young men, whom I liked more and more,[2] were extremely jolly, and never at a loss for something to say.[3] In half an hour I had seen all the important buildings of the University, all the houses where the celebrated men who had attended the University had lived, and knew the peculiarities of all the professors. Moreover I had a fair idea of the fraternity system of the University and had come to the conclusion that the "Neuphilologische Verein" was the one (which was) most suited for me. After a jolly supper in a restaurant by the river, we betook ourselves to the headquarters of the club. I was ushered into a large room decorated with countless banners and pictures, and already quite full of young men. Upon our appearance[4] everybody came towards us and a general introduction took place. Soon came the call "ad loca," and we all seated ourselves at the table, a huge affair in the shape of the Greek letter Π. In the middle of the upper end sat the president with the

[2] mir immer beſſer gefielen. [3] um ein Wort verlegen. [4] als wir hereintraten.

secretary and treasurer, all dressed in evening dress, gorgeously adorned with scarf and plumed cap. The president wore a sword with which he smote the table upon rising to call the meeting to order. To the right and left of the officers sat the alumni, famous professors at the University and noted men in (the) public life who had come to be present at the first meeting.

After an inspired address by the president and the customary singing of "Deutschland über alles," we rose to drink to the health of "Emperor, King and Empire." Great jubilation followed the toast, and the meeting was now under way.[5] For hours, speeches and songs followed each other, with pauses for general conversation between. My neighbors at the table were highly interesting, and the time passed with the greatest rapidity. At twelve o'clock the official meeting was over, and now came the "Fidulität,"[6] or informal part of the evening. In an extremely witty speech, the president gave up his office and invested the oldest alumnus, the founder of the Verein, with the insignia of office. The hoary professor rose and kept us in a roar[7] [for] five minutes (long), then concluded his speech by drinking to our health "what I have in my glass," — and it was a big glass and full at that.[8]

At one o'clock the alumni departed, but the meeting still went on. I was so well pleased with the men, most of whom I had met by this time, and by the general tone of the company, that I gave my assent without hesitation when it was proposed to me that I join the society. My

---

[5] im Gange. [6] Student slang for Fidelität. [7] ließ uns nicht aus dem Lachen kommen. [8] obendrein.

decision was communicated to the president, and immediately he rose to inform the society that Herr Krause had determined to join the society. General jubilation! And now from all sides "Prosit" was called to me and everybody clinked glasses with me. Other guests who had been invited now followed my example, and soon there were a half-dozen [prospective members or] "Keilfüchse" who had declared their intention of joining.

And when did I get home? Well, I'll not tell you how late it was, but I did not need to light a candle upon returning, for it was broad daylight and the sun was just rising over the roofs in the east.

6. The First Lecture.

My first lecture came this morning and was naturally an event of great importance.[1] With considerable curiosity, and yet with a kind of silent devotion, I entered the sacred halls where wisdom is taught [us]. How different everything was here from the gymnasium. That was a jail. Here one is free.

The lectures begin fifteen minutes after the hour — the academic quarter, they call that here — and as a rule the students do not enter the rooms before that time, but stand or walk about in the halls before entering the room. This, however, was the first lecture and Prof. Ulrich is very popular, so everyone went in early in order to get a seat. At [a] quarter past, the room was full, and men were standing around the walls.[2] There was an air of eager expectancy, and the murmur of voices remained

6. [1] erſten Ranges. [2] rings an den Wänden.

subdued. About twenty minutes past, a little old man hurried into the room and rushed towards the desk. Upon his entrance, a roar like the beginning of a storm arose and the whole room shook. It was the peculiar ovation of trampling with which the teachers are greeted. The noise lasted until the professor had reached his desk. When silence was restored,[3] he bowed, began with "Gentlemen," and immediately we were all ear and listening with attention and admiration, hardly turning our eyes from the speaker to take our notes. In a few minutes, as it seemed, a little bell over the door rang. A whole hour had passed. With a bow the professor was down from his desk, and an almost more violent trampling accompanied him to the door, which his proud and attentive "famulus" held open for him.

7. An Excursion to Weimar.

At last my wish has been fulfilled and I have seen Weimar. It seems to me as if I had actually been visiting the great giants of German literature in their own homes; never before have the names of Goethe and Schiller had so much meaning for me as now. For have I not seen the streets in which they walked, the houses in which they lived, the tables at which they sat while creating those wonderful masterpieces?

Last week Prof. Boehme proposed to his class in Gothic a scientific excursion to Weimar which should take place to-day. We were all very eager to go, especially those of us who had never seen the city of the Muses. But

[3] wieder eintreten.

the term "scientific excursion" sounded suspicious. Must we be prepared for[1] all sorts of questions on the lives and works of the great men who had inhabited Weimar in the time of Karl August? And should we have to fill our heads with dates and names for the trip? One of the older "semesters," however, assured us that it wasn't so bad [as that]; that a "scientific excursion" was only an excuse for Professors and students to pass a jolly day together, even if the goal of the trip were a city with literary associations.

So we assembled bright and early[2] at the station, and on the train we preëmpted two adjoining compartments for ourselves. Songs and jolly stories beguiled the time. At every second station Prof. Boehme had the door opened to shout for beer and sandwiches, for the cool morning air had given us a sharp appetite. Our trip took us through one of the most picturesque districts of Germany, past Naumburg with the celebrated Schulpforta, where so many famous men had been pupils, past the watering-place Kösen, and the old Rudelsburg, that goal of student pilgrimages.

"Here we are,[3]" suddenly cried one of the students, and there were the towers and roofs of Weimar in the distance. Soon the little band had left the station and was sauntering down the Sophienstrasse towards the Museum. The latter, though containing interesting collections and a famous cycle of mural paintings of scenes from the Odyssey, could not detain us long, for we wished to see the houses where the great Goethe and his friends had dwelt. On our way we stopped before the

7. [1] sollten wir uns vorbereiten auf. [2] in aller Frühe. [3] Da wären wir.

theatre to admire the splendid Goethe and Schiller Monument. A short street led us to Schiller's house. I cannot describe, nor will I attempt to do it, the feelings that came over me as I stood in the bare room at the simple desk where Schiller had sat in communion with the great heroes and heroines that thronged his brain.[4]

From here we went on to Goethe's house. What a contrast it presented! Here in the rooms, which have been restored to the original condition in which they were during Goethe's life,[5] are proofs enough of the great poet's love of splendor and his aristocratic tendencies. And yet his bed-room and study are simpler than the study rooms of our most modest students. We hardly dared speak aloud in these rooms, so full were they of the master's presence, and so overwhelmed with awe were we at[6] the thought of the wonderful works which the master had given the world.

And now we went to the cemetery where, in the Princes' Vault, the great friends lie side by side in coffins of oak covered with laurel wreaths.

It seemed a desecration to turn from the sublime thoughts which had occupied us to the prosaic thought of dinner. And yet our next visit was to[7] a restaurant, where we did full honor to a long bill-of-fare and the cool "barley-juice." Then we strolled through the park to Goethe's summer-house[8] and out to the little suburb of Tiefurt, two miles distant, where the duchess Anna Amalia often entertained a brilliant circle who rejoiced in the good fortune of being able to listen to the words of the poet.

---

[4] seine Phantasie erfüllen. [5] zu Goethes Lebzeiten. [6] bei. [7] gelten (with dat.). [8] Gartenhaus.

Here, of course, we had to eat again. But meanwhile the sun had sunk behind the hills and we had just time enough to reach the station. One of the students struck up a marching song, and we marched back to the city to its inspiring strains.

I am afraid we were not as reverent on the trip home as we should have been after a day (which was) devoted to such lofty associations. One jolly song followed (upon) another, and again at every station our thirsty leader opened the window to call "Bier her!" At last he himself began to sing an old Low-German song written against Napoleon. He commenced each following stanza higher than the preceding one and soon he was out of his depth.[9] Then he would begin again, but always with the same result. We all enjoyed it immensely and sang the refrain with a fullness of sound which completely drowned out the noise of the train.

Finally we were again in Leipzig, had thanked our kind professor, bidden each other good-bye, and were walking each to his own room, full of mingled thoughts of a glorious past and a joyful present.

---

[9] den Boden verlieren.

GRAMMATICAL NOTES.

Capitals.

1. Every noun, or word used as a noun, begins with a capital: das Dorf, der Alte, nichts Gutes, das Singen.

2. (*a*) The pronoun of address, **Sie**, and its possessive **Ihr**, begin with a capital: Sie haben Ihr Buch nicht.

(*b*) In letters all pronouns of address and their possessives begin with a capital: Du ſagſt, Du hätteſt Deinen Bruder geſehen.

3. (*a*) Except as the first word in a sentence, the pronoun **I** does not begin with a capital: Ich weiß, daß ich nichts weiß.

(*b*) Adjectives denoting nationality do not begin with a capital: das deutſche Volk.

Division into Syllables.

4. At the ends of lines compound words are divided into their component parts: Schiffs=arzt, dar=auf, voll=enden, ge=pflegt.

5. (*a*) In simple words a single consonant, or a combination denoting a single consonant (ch, ſch, ß, ph, th) goes with the following vowel: la=ſen, Stra=ße.

NOTE: **ng** is separated: Fin=ger.

(*b*) Of two or more consonants, only the last goes with the following vowel: Waſ=ſer, Knoſ=pe, Karp=fen.

NOTE: **ſt** is never separated; be=ſte; **ck** becomes **k=k**, hacken = hak=ken.

Punctuation.

As a rule the punctuation is the same in German as in English. The following exceptions, however, should be noticed.

6. In German a **comma** is required

(*a*) to set off all subordinate clauses: Ich weiß, daß es wahr iſt.

(*b*) as a rule before infinitive phrases; always before um zu, ohne zu and zu = um zu: Ich bin hier, um zu lernen.

7. In German a **comma** is not required before and after single parenthetical words: Sein Vater aber glaubte es nicht. *His father, however, did not believe it.*

8. The **hyphen** is written thus (-) and is employed to take the place of the suppressed member of a compound: Feld- und Gartenfrüchte.

NOTE: In ordinary compounds the hyphen is not used: Schulhaus.

9. Quotation marks are written thus („ "): „Guten Morgen," ſagte er.

10. An **exclamation point** commonly follows

(*a*) a command: Kommen Sie! Packe dich! Aufgeſtanden!

(*b*) the address of a letter: Lieber Vater! Sehr geehrter Herr!

The Articles.

11. The **definite article** is used

(*a*) with the names of days and months: im Juni, am Montag.

NOTE: In these and similar set expressions, usage demands the contraction of the preposition and article: am Abend; zum erſten Male; zum Abendeſſen, etc.

(*b*) distributively: zweimal das Jahr.

(*c*) instead of a possessive pronoun when no ambiguity can arise. This is usually the case in speaking of parts of the body and of clothing: Er hat ein Buch in der Hand.

(*d*) with nouns used in a general sense: Der Menſch iſt ſterblich.

(*e*) with proper names when preceded by adjectives: Der kleine Müller.

(*f*) often, colloquially, with proper names: Ich ſagte es der Hedwig.

12. The **indefinite article** is not used

(*a*) after neuter verbs with unmodified nouns denoting occupation, religion, or condition: Ich bin Lehrer. Er iſt Student. Er iſt Proteſtant. But Er iſt ein tüchtiger Lehrer.

Nouns.

13. After nouns of quantity or measurement, the article measured follows immediately without preposition and without case declension: ein Glas Bier; zwei Taſſen Kaffee; eine Menge Leute.

NOTE 1: If the noun of quantity or measurement is masculine or neuter, it is always used in the singular: zwei Glas Bier; drei Stück; zwei Fuß hoch.

NOTE 2: After voll (voller) the undeclined form is also used: Ein Korb voll Brötchen.

14. A noun denoting a part of the body, of clothing, or of equipment, if occurring in the same objective relation to each of several subjects, generally stands distributively in the definite singular. Cf. **11 c.** Sie ſetzten den Zylinder auf. Die Soldaten nahmen den Helm ab.

15. The plural of family names is often formed in **s**, as in English: wo Wienholds wohnten.

Pronouns.

16. Pronouns are used in the gender of the noun to which they refer: Wo iſt der Dampfer? Ich ſehe ihn.

17. For **personal** or **demonstrative pronouns** not referring to persons and governed in the dative or accusative by a prep-

osition, the German commonly substitutes a compound of **da** (before vowels **dar-**) and the preposition in question:

Ein Tiſch mit Büchern darauf.

18. For **interrogative** and optionally for **relative pronouns** not referring to persons, a compound of **wo** (before vowels **wor-**) is substituted:

Wovon ſprachen Sie? Von dem Ball, womit er ſpielte.

19. (*a*) The **relative pronoun** cannot be omitted:

Der Mann, den (welchen) wir geſtern ſahen.
The man we saw yesterday.

(*b*) The relative pronouns **der** and **welcher** may be used interchangeably except in the genitive case:

Der Mann, den (welchen) wir ſahen.
Der Mann, deſſen (not welches) Sohn wir ſahen.

NOTE: When the antecedent is a neuter pronoun, an adjective, or a clause, **was** is used for **welches** or **das**. Alles, was ich hatte.

Cases.

20. The **Genitive** is used adverbially to express indefinite time:

Eines Abends (abends, morgens, tags, nachts).

NOTE 1: The English use of the genitive with **of** is expressed in various ways, for example: The King of Prussia, Der König von Preußen, or Der preußiſche König. Generally, however, the genitive case without a preposition may be used: Die alten Häuſer der Stadt. *The old houses of the city.*

NOTE 2: When proper names form the genitive in '**s**,' no apostrophe is used: Heines Briefe; *Heine's Letters.*

21. The **Dative** is often used

(*a*) instead of the possessive, especially when no ambiguity is possible:

Er hat ſich das Bein gebrochen.
He has broken his leg.

Jeder Katze ſitzt eine Katze auf dem Schwanz.
On each cat's tail sits a cat.

(*b*) After **ſagen, zu** is used with the dative when the words actually said are quoted; otherwise the dative without **zu** is used:

Er ſagte zu mir: „Komm mit!"
Er ſagte mir, ich ſolle mitkommen.

(*c*) As the German denotes the case by the case-ending, it is often not necessary to use the preposition **zu**:

Ich gab es meinem Bruder,
I gave it to my brother.

22. The **Accusative** is used:

(*a*) to express definite time or extent of time:

Nächſte Woche; dreißig Tage gültig.

NOTE: Letters are dated in the accusative: Leipzig, d. 30. Juni 1905. = den dreißigſten Juni.

(*b*) to express extent of space:

ein paar Straßen entfernt.

(*c*) in absolute constructions, really as objects of a verbal form understood:

Er kam herein, die Hand zum Gruße ausgeſtreckt.

Verbs.

23. The German has no emphatic or progressive forms corresponding to the English, **I do go** or **I am going.**

Ich gehe = { *I go.* / *I do go.* / *I am going.* } Ich ging = { *I went.* / *I did go.* / *I was going.* }

24. The **passive** is less used in German than in English. Instead of it may be used:

(*a*) the constructive with **man**:

man ſagt, = *it is said.*

(*b*) the reflexive:

es findet ſich dort, *it is found there.*

25. The **present tense** is often used:

(*a*) for the English future:

Morgen ſind wir in Hamburg,
To-morrow we shall be in Hamburg.

(*b*) for the English perfect, where the verbal action still continues:

Wie lange ſind Sie in Berlin?
How long have you been in Berlin?

26. The **future** and **future perfect** are used sometimes to express conjecture or probability:

Er wird wohl oft denken = { *He doubtless often thinks.* / *He must often think.*

Er wird wohl oft gedacht haben = { *He doubtless often thought.* / *He must often have thought.*

27. In conversation the **perfect** is often used instead of the more formal preterit:

Heute bin ich um acht gekommen.

NOTE: As a rule the perfect gives the simple statement of a fact, the report of an occurrence; the preterit is used in narrative style in telling about an event or relating a story.

28. The **imperative** is often expressed by

(*a*) the infinitive:

Aufſtehen! *Get up!*

(*b*) the perfect participle:

Aufgeſtanden! *Get up!*

29. The **infinitive** is often used in a **passive sense.**

Nichts mehr war zu beſorgen,
Nothing more was to be attended to.

NOTE: The use of **zu** with the infinitive in German corresponds as a

rule to the practice in English. After all modal auxiliaries zu is omitted. Ich wünſche zu gehen. Ich will gehen.

30. The chief uses of the **subjunctive,** and those to which nearly all minor uses may be referred, are:

I. The subjunctive in indirect discourse (cf. (*a*) below):

Herr B. ſagte, daß es wahr ſei.

II. The subjunctive in conditions contrary to fact (cf. (*b*) below):

Wenn ich Geld hätte, ſo ginge ich.

(*a*) After verbs of saying, thinking, asking, and the like, the indirect statement is usually put into the subjunctive. After a present tense, however, or when the statement is conceded, the indicative is often used.

The present and future tenses of the original speaker are rendered by the present and future tenses of the subjunctive; any past tense of the speaker, by the perfect subjunctive.

NOTE 1. If the present subjunctive form is not distinguishable from the indicative, or the perfect subjunctive form from the perfect indicative, the preterit subjunctive is used in the one case, the pluperfect in the other.

NOTE 2. Especially in Northern Germany, the preterit and pluperfect subjunctive are often used instead of present and perfect subjunctives, and the present conditional for the future.

EXAMPLES.

Direct Discourse.	*Indirect Discourse.*
Ich habe Geld.	Er ſagt, / ſagte, } daß er Geld habe.
Wir haben Geld.	Sie ſagen, daß ſie Geld haben (ind.). / ſagten, daß ſie Geld hätten.
Ich hatte Geld.	Er ſagt, / ſagte, } daß er Geld gehabt habe.
Wir haben Geld gehabt.	Sie ſagen, / ſagten, } daß ſie Geld gehabt hätten.

(*b*) 1. A present condition contrary to fact is rendered by

the preterit subjunctive in the condition, and the preterit subjunctive or present conditional in the conclusion:

Wenn ich Geld hätte, } { so ginge ich.
or Hätte ich Geld, { { so würde ich gehen.

2. A past condition contrary to fact is rendered by the pluperfect subjunctive in the condition, and the pluperfect subjunctive or perfect conditional in the conclusion:

Wenn ich Geld gehabt hätte, } { so wäre ich gegangen.
or Hätte ich Geld gehabt, { { so würde ich gegangen sein.

NOTE 1: The condition may be understood and only the conclusion expressed:

Wie schön wäre das! }
Wie schön würde das sein! } (Wenn ich reich wäre).

NOTE 2: The conclusion may be understood and only the condition expressed: Wenn ich nur reich wäre! (so wäre ich glücklich.)

31. (*a*) When the perfect or pluperfect of a **modal auxiliary** is accompanied by the infinitive of another verb, the past participle of the modal auxiliary assumes the form of an infinitive:

Ich habe gekonnt, *I have been able.*
but Ich habe gehen können, *I have been able to go.*

(*b*) After a modal auxiliary an adverb or adverbial prefix or phrase is often used without the dependent verb of motion:

Ich will mit = Ich will mitgehen.

32. The English **present participle** can seldom be rendered by the corresponding present participle in German: It is usually replaced by:

(*a*) the finite verb in a co-ordinate clause, if the participial idea is as important as that contained in the verb:

Er stand da und sah den Knaben an,
He stood there looking at the boy.

(*b*) The finite verb in a subordinate clause, introduced by

a conjunction such as **als, nachdem, indem, während,** in expressing adverbial relations of time, cause or manner:

„Prosit! Erich," sagte ich, indem ich mein Glas erhob.
" *Prosit Erich!*" *I said, lifting my glass.*
Indem ich hoffe, Sie bald zu sehen,
Hoping to see you soon.

(*c*) A relative clause.

Der Herr, der auf dem Bahnsteig steht.
The man standing on the platform.

(*d*) An adjective.

Traurig über seinen Verlust ging er nach Hause.
He went home mourning his loss.

(*e*) The infinitive:

Ich sah ihn kommen, *I saw him coming.*

(*f*) The past participle:

Das Kind kam gelaufen, *the child came running.*

(*g*) A noun:

das Singen von Liedern, *the singing of songs.*

Word Order.

The Finite Verb.

33. There are three kinds of word order: **normal, inverted,** and **transposed,** according to the relative position of the finite verb and its subject. In the following the term "verb" refers to the inflected, personal verb, *i.e.*, the verb itself in simple tenses, and the auxiliary in compound tenses. The term "subject" includes the subject and its modifiers.

Note. In a compound sentence the main clause has only normal or inverted order, the dependent clause, as a rule, the transposed order. Accordingly the student should analyze compound sentences before translating, so as to be sure which is the main and which the subordinate clause.

34. The normal order: The verb follows the subject immediately. This is used in

(*a*) independent, declarative sentences:

Er kam gestern. Der Mann, den ich heute sah, ist gestern gekommen.

(*b*) Interrogative sentences beginning with a subject pronoun:

Wer ist der Mann?

35. The inverted order: The verb precedes the subject. This is used

(*a*) When any element other than the subject begins the sentence. This element may be a single word, a phrase, or a clause.

Gestern kam er.
Aus diesem Buche kann ich nichts lernen.
Als er kam, war es zu spät.

NOTE 1. **Und, denn, oder, aber, sondern, allein,** do not cause inversion or transposition, for they are co-ordinating conjunctions, and really connect two sentences in the normal order: Er kam gestern nach Hause, aber sein Freund kam nicht mit.

NOTE 2. Parenthetical and exclamatory words like **nämlich, doch, ja, nein,** likewise do not cause inversion: Er ist nicht hier. Doch, er kam gestern. Kommst du mit? Ja, ich komme.

(*b*) In independent questions, except those beginning with a subject pronoun (cf. **34 b**):

Kam er gestern?
Ist er gestern gekommen?

(*c*) To express a condition when **wenn** is omitted:

Kommt er heute, so sehe ich ihn.

(*d*) In imperative sentences:

Lesen Sie das Buch.

(*e*) In exclamatory sentences:

Kam er doch geſtern allein an! *For did he not arrive all alone yesterday!*

Wie lieſt der aber ſchön! *How well he reads!*

36. Transposed order: The verb stands at the end of the clause. This occurs in dependent clauses introduced by

(*a*) A subordinate conjunction, like **als, da, daß, indem, ob, weil,** etc.: Ich weiß, daß er geſtern kam.

NOTE 1: When **daß** is omitted, the normal order is used: Ich weiß, er kam geſtern.

NOTE 2: When **wenn** in conditions is omitted, the inverted order is used (cf. 35 c): Hätte ich Geld, ſo ginge ich.

NOTE 3: With the double infinitive participial construction, the finite verb comes just before the two infinitive forms in transposed order: Ich weiß, daß er geſtern hat kommen können.

(*b*) A relative pronoun or relative compound:

Das iſt der Herr, der geſtern gekommen iſt.

Das iſt das Buch, worin ich las.

(*c*) In exclamatory sentences beginning with an interrogative: Wie ſchön der aber lieſt! (cf. 35 e). *How well he reads!*

THE NON-FINITE PART OF THE VERB AND THE SEPARABLE PREFIX.

37. In the **normal** and **inverted orders,** the participle or infinitive in compound tenses, the participle in the passive voice, or the separable prefix in compound verbs, comes last, a participle preceding an infinitive, and both preceded by the separable prefix:

Er kam geſtern an.

Er iſt geſtern angekommen.

Er wird morgen ankommen.

Er wird morgen angekommen ſein.

NOTE: The dependent infinitive, with or without **zu,** comes at the end: Wir wollten nach Hamburg fahren; Wir wünſchten nach Hamburg zu fahren.

38. In the **transposed order,** where the finite verb stands at the end, the uninflected part of the verb immediately precedes it:

Ich weiß, daß er gestern angekommen ist.

The Other Elements

39. The position of the other elements is practically the same in all three word orders. This position is usually, but not invariably, that indicated in the following paragraphs; it may vary, depending upon the emphasis given individual words, and the usage of the individual speaker.

Note: The more important elements tend toward the end of the sentence.

40. Pronoun objects.

(*a*) The accusative of the personal pronoun precedes the dative:

Hier ist die Feder, ich schenke sie dir.

(*b*) The pronoun object precedes the noun object:

Ich schenke dir die Feder.

(*c*) **Es** and **sich** are interchangeable, and precede all other pronouns:

Er hat es ihnen erzählt;
Er hat sich ihnen vorgestellt;
Er hatte es sich anders vorgestellt;
or Er hatte sich's anders vorgestellt.

Note: In inverted or transposed order, the personal pronoun object often precedes the noun subject: Da gab ihm der Mann einen Ball.

41. Noun objects: In general,

(*a*) The dative of a person precedes the accusative of a thing:

Er gab dem Manne einen Brief.

(*b*) If both objects are persons, or both are things, the accusative usually precedes the dative:

Er übergab seinen Sohn dem Lehrer.
Er widmete seine Kraft der Schule.

(*c*) The accusative object precedes the genitive object:

Er beraubte den Garten seiner Blumen.

(*d*) The simple object usually precedes the object with a preposition:

Ich habe ein Buch von dir.

42. Attributive adjectives and **participles** precede the nouns they modify and are preceded by their own modifiers:

Es ist ein hundert meter hoher Turm.
Die auf dem Meere schwimmende Flotte.
Die in dem vorhergehenden Kapitel beschriebene Stadt.

43. Adverbs:

(*a*) Adverbs or adverbial phrases of time precede those of place, manner or degree, and usually precede the noun objects:

Er ging heute sehr langsam nach Hause.
Er hat mir gestern einen Taler geliehen.

(*b*) In the normal order the adverb may not stand between the subject and the finite verb:

Ich arbeite immer gut; not, ich immer arbeite gut.

(*c*) The subject and verb may, however, be separated by such words as **aber, also, auch, dagegen, hingegen, indessen, jedoch, nämlich.**

Der Mann aber wollte es nicht.

(*d*) In the inverted order an adverbial modifier may stand between the verb and the noun subject:

Da kam ganz plötzlich die Nachricht.

NOTE: A sentence may not begin with two adverbial modifiers unless they really form one element; Geſtern kam er hier an; but Morgens um zehn Uhr ſteht die Sonne ſchon hoch.

44. Position of the **negative (nicht, nie,** etc.):

(*a*) In simple tenses the negative follows the object.

Ich kenne ihn nicht.

(*b*) It follows the adverb of time, and precedes the adverb of place or manner and the prepositional phrase.

Ich gehe nicht mit ihm.
Er wird morgen nicht beſſer arbeiten.

(*c*) It precedes an infinitive, a past participle, a separable prefix, and a predicate adjective:

Ich werde ihn nicht (nie) ſehen.
Ich habe ihn nicht geſehen.
Ich ſehe ihn nicht an.
Die Arbeit iſt nicht leicht.

(*d*) **Nicht** precedes a word immediately when that word is especially to be negatived:

Ich meine nicht den Mann, ſondern die Frau.

45. The **predicative adjective** or **noun** comes in the latter part of the sentence:

Er war Jahre lang mein guter Freund geweſen.
Das Kind war geſtern abend ſehr krank.
The child was very sick yesterday evening.

46. Position of **dependent clauses:**

(*a*) Since dependent clauses have the value of substantives, adverbs or adjectives, their position falls under the rules already given; (otherwise the order is usually as in English). For example:

1. An adverbial clause should not come between subject and verb in the normal order:

The general, having lost the battle, was very much discouraged,

becomes Der General war, nachdem er die Schlacht verloren hatte, ſehr entmutigt. Or, Der General war ſehr entmutigt, nachdem er die Schlacht verloren hatte.

2. So, too, a sentence should not begin with two adverbial clauses:

As soon as he had recovered, although he was still weak, he returned to his work,

becomes Sobald er ſich erholt hatte, ging er wieder an die Arbeit, obgleich er noch ſchwach war.

(*b*) The dependent clause may be incorporated in the main structure of the sentence, or may be attached to it as an appendix. An important principle is that a short word should not stand alone at the end of a sentence after a subordinate clause:

Der Mann ſah das Buch an, welches er in der Hand hatte,

not Der Mann ſah das Buch, welches er in der Hand hatte, an;

but Der Mann ſah das Buch, welches er in der Hand hatte, mit großer Aufmerkſamkeit an.

NOTE: The dependent infinitive with **zu** is often regarded as a dependent clause, and is subject to the same rules (cf. 37, Note).

47. In general, then, the elements of a sentence come in the following order:

(*a*) Normal order: **Subject; Finite Verb;** Pronoun Object; Adverb of Time; Noun Object; Negative; Adverb of Place, Manner or Degree; Predicate Adjective or Noun; Non-Finite Verb.

(*b*) Inverted order: Inverting element (if present); **Finite Verb; Subject;** other elements as in (*a*).

(*c*) Transposed order: Transposing element; **Subject;** other elements as in (*a*); **Finite Verb.**

48. EXAMPLES OF WORD ORDER.

	Subject and Finite Verb	Pro. Obj.	Adv. of Time	Noun Object	Neg.	Adv. of Place, Manner or Degree	Non-finite Verb	Finite Verb
Normal	**Der Mann hat**	mir	gestern	das Buch	nicht	sehr gern	geliehen.	
	Ich kann	dir	morgen	die Rechnung	nicht	vollständig	bezahlen.	
	Mein Freund hat	sich	früher	diesen Studien	nicht	so fleißig	gewidmet.	
	Er ist		gestern	mit dem Kind		nach Hause	gekommen.	
	Er sah	ihn				traurig	an.	
Inverted	**Hat der Mann**	mir	gestern	das Buch	nicht	sehr gern	geliehen?	
	Morgen **kann ich**	dir		die Rechnung	nicht	vollständig	bezahlen.	
	Hat mein Freund	sich	früher	diesen Studien	nicht	so fleißig	gewidmet?	
	Ist er		gestern	mit dem Kinde		nach Hause	gekommen?	
	Sah er	ihn				traurig	an?	
Transposed	Ich weiß, daß **der Mann**	mir	gestern	das Buch	nicht	sehr gern	geliehen	**hat.**
	Ich sage, daß **ich**	dir	morgen	die Rechnung	nicht	vollständig	bezahlen	**kann.**
	Man sagt, daß **mein Freund**	sich	früher	diesen Studien	nicht	so fleißig	gewidmet	**habe.**
	Frage ihn, ob **er**		gestern	mit dem Kinde		nach Hause	gekommen	**ist.**
	Ich weiß, daß **er**	ihn				traurig	an=	**sah.**

Words likely to cause confusion.

49. (*a*) Even where the words are separated, *not a* (*not any*) = **kein, not nicht ein**; *not anything* = **nichts, not nicht etwas.**

He did not have a farthing,
Er hatte keinen Heller.
Have you not heard anything of him?
Haben Sie nichts von ihm gehört?

(*b*) *Himself, herself,* etc. = **ſelbſt** (or **ſelber**), in an emphatic sense. This word is indeclinable, and the same form is used with all numbers and cases:

Mein Freund war ſelbſt dabei. Ihm ſelbſt gab ich den Brief.

Sich is reflexive only, and can be used only in dative or accusative:

Er hat ſich gezeigt.

(*c*) Of the three words for *but*, **aber, ſondern, allein**:

Aber (or, rarely, **allein**) is used after both affirmative and negative clauses. It qualifies but does not contradict:

Er iſt reich, aber er iſt nicht ſehr gut.
Er iſt reich, aber (or allein) er will nicht bezahlen.

Sondern is preceded by a negative and introduces an opposite statement:

Er iſt nicht reich, ſondern arm.

NOTE: When, in English, *however* may be substituted for *but*, use **aber** (or **allein**); when *but* = *but rather*, use **ſondern.**

(*d*) *When* =

Wann, in a direct or indirect question regarding time:

Wann kam er?

Wenn, referring to customary or repeated action (= *whenever*) in past, present, or future, and with a present or future verb:

Wenn ich zu Hauſe bin, ſchreibe ich dir.
Wenn ich nach Hauſe kam, warſt du immer fort.

Als referring to a single event in past time:

Als ich geſtern nach Hauſe kam, warſt du ſchon fort.

(*e*) *As* =

Als or **wie** in expression of past time:

Als ich nach Hauſe ging, *as I was going home.*

Da in expressions of cause:

Da ich kein Geld hatte, mußte ich zu Hauſe bleiben.

(*f*) *Since* =

Seit, as a preposition.

Seit dem Kriege, *since the war.*

Da in expressions of cause: cf. (*e*).

Seit or **ſeitdem** in expressions of time:

Seitdem ich da bin, iſt er nicht gekommen.

(*g*) *If* =

Wenn, in conditions (cf. **30 b**).

Ob, in the sense of *whether:*

Er fragte mich, ob ich gehen wollte.

(*h*) *After* =

Nach, as a preposition:

Nach fünf Uhr, after five o'clock.

Nachdem, as a conjunction:

Nachdem ich gekommen war, war es zu ſpät.

VOCABULARIES.

EXPLANATIONS.

THE usual abbreviations are employed. A dash (—) stands for the title-word. As a rule, parts of speech are indicated only where confusion might otherwise occur. Pronunciation is occasionally indicated in square brackets or by accent.

When part of a word or expression is enclosed in parenthesis, this part may be omitted. Thus, **civil service,** die (Civil')verwaltung, indicates that civil service = either Civilverwaltung *or* Verwaltung; the other uses of parenthesis require no explanation.

When the German equivalent of the English word forms part of a compound, it is indicated thus: **imperial,** Reichs-, i.e. imperial land = Reichsland.

Separable compound verbs have a hyphen between prefix and verb (ab-ziehen). Inseparable verbs are written as one word (bekommen). Verbs marked with an asterisk (*) are strong or irregular. Their forms can be found in the list of Strong and Irregular Verbs, p. 202. Verbs conjugated with sein are indicated by (sein); those conjugated with either sein or haben by (sein *or* haben). In all other cases the verb is to be conjugated with haben.

The definite article is printed with the nominative form of the noun, and is to be learned as a part of the noun. The genitive singular and nominative plural of all nouns having a plural are indicated. Thus, das Schiff, -(e)s, -e, indicates neuter noun, genitive singular = Schiffs or Schiffes, nominative plural = Schiffe; das Schloß, -sses, ¨sser = das Schloß, des Schlosses, die Schlösser. When e is enclosed in parenthesis, -(e)s, it may be used or omitted; as a rule, monosyllabic nouns retain it, polysyllabic nouns omit it. Thus, der Sohn, -(e)s, ¨e, = der Sohn, des Sohnes, die Söhne; der König, -(e)s, -e, = der König, des Königs, die Könige. Die Eile, —, indicates feminine noun; genitive singular = Eile, no plural.

Adverbs in -ly are given only when they can not be rendered by the uninflected form of the corresponding adjective. Likewise in the German-English Vocabulary, schön = either *beautiful* or *beautifully.*

GERMAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

A

ab, *adv. and sep. pref.*, off, away, down; — und zu, occasionally.

der **Abend,** –s, –e, evening.

das **Abendbrot,** –(e)s, –e, supper.

aber, *conj.*, but, however.

ab=fahren * (sein), leave, depart, start, pull out.

die **Abfahrt,** —, –en, departure.

abhängig, *adj.*, dependent; — von, dependent upon.

ab=nehmen, * take from.

die **Abreise,** —, –n, departure.

ab=schicken, send off, despatch.

das **Abschiedssignal,** –(e)s, –e, signal of departure.

der **Abteil,** –(e)s, –e, compartment.

ab=ziehen * (sein), withdraw.

der **Abzug,** –(e)s, ¨e, withdrawal, departure.

die **Adreſ'ſe,** —, –n, address.

adreſſie'ren, address.

adieu [adjöh'], *interj.*, farewell, good-by.

der **Ahn,** –(e)s *or* –en, –en, ancestor.

all, *adj. or pron.*, all; in –er Eile, quickly; alles, everything *or* everybody.

allein, *adj.*, alone, only.

allerlei, *indecl. adj.*, all sorts of.

allgemein, *adj.*, common, general, universal.

allzu, far too, too much.

als, *conj.*, when, as, after; *after compar.*, than; *after negative*, but, except.

alſo, *adv.*, so, thus; *conj.*, therefore, then, accordingly, so.

alt (¨er, ¨eſt), *adj.*, old, former; der Alte, the old man.

älter, *adj.*, elderly.

das **Altertum,** –(e)s, ¨er, antiquity.

altertüm'lich, *adj.*, antique, old.

das **Amerika,** –s, America.

amerika'niſch, *adj.*, American.

das **Amt,** –(e)s, ¨er, office, post.

an, *prep.* (*w. dat. or acc.*), *sep. pref. or adv.*, at, by, towards, in, on, to.

an=bieten, * offer.

der **Anblick,** –(e)s, –e, sight.

an=blicken, look at.

ander, *adj.*, other, different; unter —em, among other things.

anderswo, *adv.*, elsewhere, otherwise.

an=erkennen, * recognize.

an=fangen, * begin.

an=fragen, inquire.

die **Angabe,** —, –n, statement, information.

an=geben, * state, tell, give.

angenehm, *adj.*, pleasant, agreeable.

an=greifen, * attack.

die **Angſt,** —, ¨e, anxiety.

an=halten, * stop

der **Anker**, –s, —, anchor; vor —, at anchor.
an=kommen * (ſein), arrive.
die **Ankunft**, —, ¨e, arrival.
an=laſſen,* let on.
an=laufen,* touch at.
an=legen, put to shore, bring up.
die **Annahme**, —, –n, acceptance, reception.
an=nehmen,* accept.
anregend, *part. adj.*, inspiring, interesting.
an=ſehen,* look at, consider.
anſtatt, *prep.*, instead of.
an=ſtoßen,* touch (glasses).
antiqua'riſch, second-hand.
die **Antwort**, —, –en, answer.
antworten, answer.
an=ziehen,* put on, pull away; ſich —, dress.
die **Arbeit**, —, –en, work.
arbeiten, work.
arg (¨er, ¨ſt), *adj.*, bad, deceitful.
arm (¨er, ¨ſt), *adj.*, poor, unfortunate.
atmen, breathe.
auch, *conj.*, also, even; wenn —, even if.
auf, *prep.* (*w. dat. or acc.*) *and sep. pref.*, on, upon, to, in, into, at; — und ab, to and fro, up and down.
auf=brechen * (ſein), depart, set out.
der **Aufenthalt**, –(e)s, –e, sojourn, stop.
die **Auffaſſung**, —, –en, conception.
die **Aufführung**, —, –en, production, performance.
auf=geben,* propose (a question or task), give up, check (of baggage).
auf=hören, cease.
auf=machen, open.
die **Aufnahme**, —, –n, admission, reception.
aufrichtig, *adj.*, frank.
die **Aufſchrift**, —, –en, inscription, sign.
auf=ſetzen, to put on.
auf=ſpielen, start to play, strike up.
auf=ſtehen * (ſein), get up.
auf=ſuchen, look for.
der **Auftrag**, –(e)s, ¨e, order, commission.
auf=treiben*, find, procure, get hold of.
auf=wachen (ſein), *intr.*, awake.
das **Auge**, –s, –n, eye.
der **Augenblick**, –(e)s, –e, moment.
der **Auguſtusplatz**, –es, ¨e, Augustus Square.
aus, *prep.* (*w. dat.*), *or sep. pref.*, out, out of, from, of.
aus=führen, accomplish, carry out.
die **Ausgabe**, —, –n, edition, expense.
aus=geben,* spend.
aus=packen, unpack.
der **Ausſchuß**, –ſchuſſes, –ſchüſſe, committee.
aus=ſehen,* look, appear.
außer, *prep.*, out of, besides, except.
äußerſt, *adj.*, extreme.
aus=ſprechen,* pronounce, express.
aus=ſteigen* (ſein), to leave, step out (of the car).
ſich **aus=ſtrecken**, stretch one's self out, extend.

aus=ſuchen, hunt out, pick out.
die **Auſter,** —, –n, oyster.

B

der **Bahnbeamte** (*adj. inflection*), railway official.
der **Bahnhof,** –(e)s, ¨e, railway station.
der **Bahnhofsvorſteher,** –s, —, station-master.
der **Bahnſteig,** –(e)s, –e, railway platform.
bald, *adv.*, soon; — darauf, soon after; — . . . —, now . . . now.
die **Bank,** —, ¨e, bench, seat.
der **Bär,** –en, –en, bear.
das **Barome'ter,** –s, —, barometer.
bauen, construct, build.
der **Baum,** –(e)s, ¨e, tree.
bay(e)riſch, *adj.*, Bavarian.
beabſichtigen, intend, have in mind.
der **Beamte** (*adj. infl.*), official, agent.
bedauern, regret.
bedecken, cover; ſich —, become overcast.
bedeuten, mean.
bedeutend, *part. adj.*, considerable, good, notable.
bedeutſam, *adj.*, significant.
ſich **bedienen** (*w. gen.*), employ, make use of.
bedrängen, press, beset hard.
beehren, honor; ſich —, have the honor.
beenden, finish.
der **Befehl,** –(e)s, –e, order.
befehlen*, command.
ſich **befinden,*** be, find one's self, feel.
ſich **begeben,*** betake one's self.
begleiten, accompany.
begrenzen, bound.
der **Begriff,** –(e)s, –e; im –(e) ſein, to be on the point of.
behalten,* keep, preserve.
beherrſchen, rule.
bei, *prep.* (*w. dat.*), *adv.*, *or sep. pref.*, by, at the house of, with, at, over, in, near.
beide, *adj. pl.*, both, two.
der **Beiſtand,** –(e)s, assistance.
bekannt, *part. adj.*, well-known.
der **Bekannte** (*adj. infl.*), acquaintance.
die **Bekanntſchaft,** —, –en, acquaintanceship.
bekommen,* get, receive, have.
belebt, *part. adj.*, animated.
die **Belebtheit,** —, animation.
beliebt, *part. adj.*, well liked, popular.
bemalt, *part. adj.*, painted, covered with pictures.
benachrichtigen, inform.
bequem, *adj.*, comfortable, convenient; es ſich (*dat.*) — machen, make one's self comfortable.
bereit', *adj.*, ready, prepared.
ſich **beſchäftigen,** busy one's self.
beſchäftigt, *part. adj.*, busy.
beſcheiden, *adj.*, unassuming, modest, humble.
beſchreiben,* describe.
beſetzt, *part. adj.*, occupied.
beſichtigen, view, look at, survey.
ſich **beſinnen,*** consider, bethink one's self.
beſitzen,* have, possess.

beſonder, *adj.*, special.
beſonders, *adv.*, especially.
beſorgen, look after, do.
beſſer, *adj.* (*compar. of* gut), better.
beſt, *adj.* (*superl. of* gut), best; am —en, best; zum —en geben, relate, favor with.
beſtehen,* exist, endure.
beſtellen, order.
beſtimmen, intend, determine.
der **Beſuch,** –(e)s, –e, call, visit; auf —, visiting.
die **Beſuchskarte,** —, –n, calling card.
betrachten, look at, examine.
das **Bett,** –(e)s, –en, bed.
bevor, *conj.*, before.
bewahren, keep, preserve.
bewegt, *part. adj.*, stirring, agitated.
die **Bewegung,** —, –en, motion.
bewundern, admire.
bezahlen, pay (for).
die **Bezahlung,** —, –en, payment.
bezeichnen, mark.
die **Bibliothek',** —, –en, library.
das **Bier,** –(e)s, –e, beer.
das **Biertrinken,** –s, beer-drinking.
billigen, approve of.
bis, *prep.* (*w. acc.*), *or adv.*, to, as far as, until; — zu, as far as, by; — auf, up to.
die **Bitte,** —, –n, request, prayer.
bitten*, ask, beg; bitte, please.
blaß, *adj.*, pale.
blau, *adj.*, blue.
bleiben* (ſein), remain.
der **Bleiſtift,** –(e)s, –e, lead-pencil.
der **Blick,** –(e)s, –e, look, glance.
blond, *adj.*, fair, flaxen.
das **Blut,** –(e)s, blood.
der **Bock,** –(e)s, ¨e, box (of carriage).
der **Bord,** –(e)s, –e, (ship)board, an —, on board.
bösartig, *adj.*, wicked, malicious.
brauchen, need.
brechen*, break.
breit, *adj*, broad.
der **Brief,** –(e)s, –e, letter.
bringen*, bring, take.
das **Brötchen,** –s, —, roll.
die **Brücke,** —, –n, bridge, gangway.
der **Bruder,** –s, ¨, brother.
das **Buch,** –(e)s, ¨er, book.
die **Bürde,** —, –n, burden.

C

der **Charak'ter,** –s, –te're, character.
charakteriſtiſch, *adj.*, characteristic.
Co., for (die) **Compagnie'** (Kompanie'), —, –(e)n, company.
die **Couſi'ne,** —, –n, cousin.

D

da, *adv.*, there, here; then, on that account; *conj.*, when, while, since, as.
dabei, *adv.*, at the same time; thereby, along.
das **Dach,** –(e)s, ¨er, roof.
dadurch, *adv.*, thereby.
dahin, *adv. or sep. pref.*, thither, there.
dahin-fahren* (ſein), go thither.
dahin-gehen* (ſein), go thither.
dahin-ſauſen (ſein), rush along (away).
dahin-toben (ſein), rage along (away).
die **Dame,** —, –n, lady.

damit, *adv.*, with it; *conj.*, in order that.
der **Dampf**, –(e)s, ¨e, steam.
der **Dampfer**, –s, —, steamer.
daneben, *adv.*, near by, beside them.
der **Dank**, –(e)s, thanks.
danken (*w. dat.*), thank.
dann, *adv.*, then.
darauf, *adv.*, thereupon.
dar=ſtellen, portray, represent.
die **Darſtellung**, —, –en, presentation, representation.
daß, *conj.*, that, in order that.
das **Deck**, –(e)s, –e, deck.
der **Deckel**, –s, —, lid, cover.
der **Degen**, –s, —, sword, warrior, hero.
deinig, yours; die Deinigen, your family.
denken,* think, suppose; ſich (*dat.*) —, imagine.
das **Denkmal**, –(e)s, ¨er *or* –e, monument.
denn, *conj.*, for, because; *adv.*, then, now.
der, die, das, *def. art.*, the; *dem. pron. or adj.*, this, that, he, she, it; *rel. pron.*, who, which, what.
derſelbe, dieſelbe, dasſelbe, *dem. pron. or adj.*, the same.
deshalb, *adv.*, therefore.
deſto, *cf.* je.
deutſch, *adj.*, German; *m. or f. as noun*, German; *neut. sg. as noun*, German (language); auf —, in German.
das **Deutſchland**, –(e)s, Germany.
der **Dezember**, –s *or* —, —, December.
dicht, *adj.*, close; — beſetzt, crowded.
der **Dichter**, –s, —, poet.
dick, *adj.*, stout.
didak'tiſch, *adj.*, didactic.
dienen (*w. dat.*), serve.
der **Dienstag**, –(e)s, –e, Tuesday.
das **Dienſtmädchen**, –s, —, maid.
dieſer, dieſe, dieſes *or* **dies**, *dem. pron. or adj.*, this, that, the latter.
diesmal, *adv.*, this time.
das **Diktat'**, –(e)s, –e, dictation.
das **Ding**, –(e)s, —e, thing.
direkt', *adj.*, direct.
dividie'ren, divide.
doch, *conj. or adv.*, yet, but, anyway.
der **Dok'tor**, –s, –to'ren, doctor.
der **Dorn**, –(e)s, –en (*or* –e *or* ¨er), thorn.
dort, *adv*, there.
Dr., *abbrev. for* Doktor, doctor.
drama'tiſch, *adj.*, dramatic.
drehen, turn, invert; ſich —, turn.
dreißig, *num. adj.*, thirty.
dreizehn, *num. adj.*, thirteen.
dreizehnt, *num. adj.*, thirteenth.
dritt, *num. adj.*, third.
drohen, threaten.
die **Droſchke**, —, –n, cab.
drüben, over there, across the sea.
du, *pers. pron.*, thou, you.
dumm (¨er, ¨ſt), *adj.*, stupid.
dumpf, *adj.*, dull, low.
dunkel, *adj.*, dark; Dunkles, dark colored beer.
dunkelbraun, *adj.*, dark brown.
durch, *prep.* (*w. acc.*), *or sep. or insep. pref.*, through, during.
ſich **durch=drängen**, crowd through, press through.
durchnäßt, *part. adj.*, wet through.
dürfen,* may, can, be permitted.

der Durſt, –es, thirst.
das Dutzend, –s, –e, dozen.

E

eben, *adv.*, now, just now, just.
ebenſo, *adv.*, as, just as, just so.
echt, *adj.*, genuine.
die Ecke, —, –n, corner.
ehe, *conj.*, before.
der Eheherr, –n, –en, husband.
die Eigenſchaft, —, –en, nature, attribute.
eigentlich, *adv.*, really.
das Eiland, –(e)s, –e, island.
die Eile, —, haste; in aller —, quickly.
eilen (ſein *or* haben), hasten.
ein, eine, ein, *indef. art., num. adj., or indef. pron.*, a, an, one; ſo —, such a.
einander, *recip. pron.*, each other, one another.
der Eindruck, –(e)s, ¨e, impression.
einfach, *adj.*, simple, informal; —e Fahrkarte, single-trip ticket.
ein=fahren* (ſein), come in.
ein=flechten,* introduce, bring in, interweave.
einig, *adj.*, united, some.
die Einigung, —, –en, unification.
ein=kehren (ſein), put up at.
ein=laden,* invite.
die Einladung, —, –en, invitation.
die Einleitung, —, –en, introduction.
einmal', *adv.*, just, even.
ein' mal, *adv.*, one time, once.
ein=packen, pack.
ein=richten, arrange.
eins, *num.*, one, one o'clock.
ein=ſchlafen* (ſein), go to sleep.
einſt, *adv.*, once.
ein=ſteigen* (ſein), get aboard.
ein=treten* (ſein), enter.
einzeln, *adj.*, single.
ein=ziehen,* haul in.
Eis, –es, ice.
der Eiſenbahnbeamte (*adj. infl.*), railway-employee.
der Eiſenbahnwagen, –s, —, car.
das Element', –(e)s, –e, element.
elfhundert vierzig, 1140.
die Eltern (*only in plur.*), parents.
empfangen,* receive.
das Empfangszimmer, –s, —, reception room, parlor.
der Empfehlungsbrief, –(e)s, –e, letter of recommendation (introduction).
empor=ragen, rise.
das Ende, –s, –n, end.
endlich, *adv.*, at length, at last.
eng, *adj.*, narrow.
das England, –(e)s, England.
engliſch, *adj.*, English.
ſich entfernen, to withdraw.
entfernt, *part. adj.*, distant.
das Entgegenkommen, –s, interest, kind treatment.
entgegnen, reply.
ſich entſchließen,* determine, decide.
entſchuldigen, pardon, excuse.
entzücken, charm.
er, *pers. pron.*, he, it.
das Erbarmen, –s, pity.
erblicken, see, catch sight of.
die Erde, —, –n, earth, world.
erfahren,* learn.
der Erfolg, –(e)s, –e, success.
erfreuen, delight, please.

ergeben, *part. adj.*, devoted; Ihr —er, yours respectfully; —ſt, *adv.*, most respectfully.
erhalten*, to receive, obtain.
die **Erinnerung,** —, –en, memory.
erkennen*, recognize, know.
erklären, explain, declare.
erlangen, obtain.
erlauben (*dat. of pers.*), permit.
ernſt, *adj.*, earnest.
erreichen, attain.
errichten, erect, build.
erſchallen* (*or weak*) (ſein), resound.
erſcheinen* (ſein), appear, come.
erſchlagen,* kill.
erſt, *adj.*, first; *adv.*, only, not until.
erſtaunt, *part. adj.*, astonished, amazed.
erſuchen, beg, request.
erwidern, answer, return.
erwünſcht, *part. adj.*, desired, wished for.
erzählen, relate, tell, tell a story.
eſſen,* eat.
das **Eſſen,** –s, food, meal.
die **Etage** [g = *z in azure*]; —, –n, story, floor.
etwa, *adv.*, about.
etwas, *indef. pron. or adv.*, something, some.
evangeliſch, *adj.*, evangelical.
eventuell', possibly, eventually.
die **Expedition',** —, –en, office.

F

fahren,* *intr.* (ſein), go, travel; *tr.*, drive.
die **Fahrkarte,** —, –n, railway ticket.
der **Fahrplan,** –(e)s, ¨e, time-table.
die **Fahrt,** —, –en, trip, ride.
der **Fall,** –(e)s, ¨e, case.
falls, *conj.*, if, in case.
die **Fami'lie** [ie = je], —, –n, family.
der **Familienanſchluß,** –ſſes, ¨ſſe, family intimacy.
das **Faß,** –ſſes, ¨ſſer, keg, barrel, cask.
die **Faſſa'de,** —, –n, façade, front.
faſt, *adv.*, almost.
der **Faulpelz,** –es, –e, lazy-bones.
der **Feind,** –(e)s, –e, foe.
das **Fenſter,** –s, —, window, port-hole.
fern, *adj.*, distant; –er Stehende, more distant acquaintances.
die **Ferne,** —, –n, distance.
das **Fernrohr,** –(e)s, –e, telescope.
fertig, *adj.*, done, finished.
feſt, *adj.*, firm.
feſt-halten,* hold fast.
die **Fidelität,** informal part of student meeting.
die **Figur',** —, –en, figure.
finden,* find; ſich —, be, be found.
das **Fiſcherboot,** –(e)s, –e or ¨e, fishing boat.
flattern, *intr.*, wave, flutter.
flüchten, flee; ſich —, retreat, take refuge.
der **Flur,** –(e)s, –e, hall, corridor.
der **Fluß,** –ſſes, ¨ſſe, stream, river.
der **Flußlauf,** –(e)s, –e, course (of a river).
die **Folge,** —, –n; — leiſten, accept.
folgen (*w. dat.*), (ſein), follow.
folgend, *part. adj.*, following.
folgendermaßen, *adv.*, as follows.
das **Fort** [*French pron.*], –s, –s, fort.

fort=fahren* (ſein *or* haben), continue.
fort=leben, live on.
der **Fortſchritt,** –(e)s, –e, progress.
fortwährend, *adv.*, continually.
fort=ziehen* (ſein), to go forth.
die **Frage,** —, –n, question.
fragen, ask, inquire.
der **Franzo'ſe,** –n, –n, Frenchman; *plu.*, French.
franzö'ſiſch, *adj.*, French.
die **Frau,** —, –en, woman, wife; Mrs.
das **Fräulein,** –s, —, maid, young lady, Miss.
frei, *adj.*, free, unoccupied, vacant.
freſſen,* eat (of animals).
die **Freude,** —, –n, joy, pleasure.
freuen, *tr.*, to delight, please; ſich —, rejoice, be glad.
der **Freund,** –(e)s, –e, friend.
freundlich, *adj.*, cordial, kind, cheerful.
die **Freundlichkeit,** —, –en, kindness.
die **Freundſchaft,** —, –en, friendship.
friſch, *adj.*, fresh.
fromm, *adj.*, pious, good, kind.
fruchtbar, *adj.*, fruitful.
früh, *adj.*, early; –er, *adv.* (*comp.*), formerly.
der **Fuchs,** –es, ¨e, fox, freshman.
fühlen, feel.
führen, lead, conduct.
füllen, fill.
fünf, *num. adj.*, five.
fünfzig, *num. adj.*, fifty.
fungie'ren, act.
furchtbar, *adj.*, fearful, frightful.
fürlieb', *adv;* — nehmen, put up with things, make shift.

G

die **Gabe,** —, –n, gift.
die **Gabel,** —, –n, fork.
ganz, *adj.*, whole, all, entire; — und gar, entirely.
gar, *adv.;* — nicht, not at all; — ſeltſam, very peculiar.
die **Gaſſe,** —, –n, lane, alley, street.
der **Gaſt,** –(e)s, ¨e, guest, patron.
das **Gaſthaus,** –es, ¨er, hotel, inn.
der **Gaſthof,** –(e)s, ¨e, hotel.
gebären,* bear.
das **Gebäude,** –s, —, building.
geben,* give; es gibt, there is, there are.
das **Gebiet,** –(e)s, –e, territory.
gebildet, *part. adj.*, educated, cultured.
geb. *for* **geboren,** *part. adj.*, born, née.
das **Gebüſch,** –es, –e, *coll.*, bushes.
das **Gedächtnis,** –niſſes, –niſſe, memory, mind.
geehrt, *part. adj.*, honored; –e Frau (*in letters*), Dear Madam.
gefährlich, *adj.*, dangerous.
gefallen,* (*w. dat.*) please.
gefällig, *adj.*, pleasing, desired.
gegen, *prep. w. acc.*, to, toward; *adv.*, about.
gegenüber, *prep.* (*w. dat.*), opposite to, in relation to.
das **Gehalt,** –(e)s, ¨er, salary.
gehen* (ſein), go; hoch —, be rough (of the sea); Wie geht es Ihnen? How do you do?
der **Gehrock,** –(e)s, ¨e, frock-coat.

der Geiſt, –es, –er, spirit.
das Geld, –(e)s, –er, money.
die Gelegenheit, —, –en, opportunity, occasion.
gellend, *part. adj.*, shrill.
gelten,* pass for, be considered.
die Gemahlin, —, –nen, wife; Frau —, wife.
das Gemüt, –(e)s, –er, heart, mind, disposition.
gemütlich, *adj.*, cosy, comfortable, at one's ease.
genau, *adj.*, exact, detailed.
geneigt, *part. adj.*, inclined, propitious.
der General', –(e)s, –e, general.
genug, *adj.*, enough.
das Gepäck, –(e)s, –e, baggage, luggage.
der Gepäckraum, –(e)s, ¨e, baggage-room.
der Gepäckträger, –s, —, porter.
gerade, *adj.*, straight; *adv.*, just; — aus, straight ahead.
das Gericht, –(e)s, –e, dish.
gering, *adj.*, slight, unimportant.
der Germane, –n, –n, ancient German, Teuton.
gern(e), *adv.* (lieber, am liebſten), gladly, willingly; — haben, like; — leſen, like to read.
der Geſchäftsbrief, –(e)s, –e, business letter.
geſchäftsführend, *part. adj.*, executive.
geſchehen* (ſein), happen.
die Geſchichte, —, –n, story, history.
das Geſicht, –(e)s, –er, face.
geſpannt, *part. adj.*, eager; — auf, curious about, eager to meet.
die Geſtalt, —, –en, shape, form.
geſtatten (*dat. of pers.*), permit.
gewähren, grant, allow.
gewaltig, *adj.*, great, powerful.
das Gewäſſer, –s, —, water.
das Gewicht, –(e)s, –e, weight.
gewiß, *adj.*, certain; *adv.*, certainly, to be sure.
gewöhnlich, *adj.*, ordinary.
das Glas, –es, ¨er, glass.
glatt, *adj.*, smooth.
glauben, believe, suppose.
gleich, *adj.*, equal, same; *adv.*, immediately.
das Glück, –(e)s, fortune, good-luck.
glücklich, *adj.*, happy, fortunate, successful, safe, pleasant.
der Glückwunſch, –es, ¨e, congratulation, good wish.
die Gnade, —, –n, grace, clemency.
die Goetheausgabe, —, –n, edition of Goethe's works.
das Gold, –(e)s, gold.
gramma'tiſch, *adj.*, grammatical.
das Gras, –es, ¨er, grass.
grauen, grow gray.
die Grenze, —, –n, boundary.
groß (größer, größt), *adj.*, great, large, tall.
großartig, *adj.*, magnificent.
die Großſtadt, —, ¨e, large city.
grün, *adj.*, green.
die Gruppe, —, –n, group.
der Gruß, –es, ¨e, greeting, regards.
gucken, peep.
gültig, *adj.*, valid, good.
gut (beſſer, beſt), *adj.*, good, *adv.*, well; very well.
das Gut, –(e)s, ¨er, possession, property.
der Güterwagen, –s, —, freight-car.
der Güterzug, –(e)s, ¨e, freight-train.

gütigſt, *adv.*, most kindly.
gutmütig, *adj.*, good-natured.
das **Gymna'ſium,** –s, Gymnaſien, gymnasium = (high-school).

H

das **Haar,** –(e)s, –e, hair.
haben,* have.
der **Hafen,** –s, ¨, harbor.
halb, *adj. or adv.*, half; — vier, half past three; — zwölf, half past eleven.
halbvergeſſen, *part. adj.*, half forgotten.
halten,* hold, stop, keep.
die **Hand,** —, ¨e, hand; vor der —, for the present.
(ſich) **handeln,** act, treat (of), be about.
der **Handkoffer,** –s, —, hand-bag, valise.
Hanno'verſch, *adj.*, Hanoverian.
hart, *adj.*, hard.
der **Harz,** –es, the Harz Mountains.
der **Haſe,** –n, –n, hare.
der **Haufe(n),** –ns, –n, heap, pile.
häufig, *adj.*, frequent.
die **Hauptteigenſchaft,** —, –en, chief characteristic.
das **Haus,** –es, ¨er, house; **zu –e,** at home.
der **Hausknecht,** –(e)s, –e, hostler, boots, servant in hotel.
der **Hausmann,** –(e)s, ¨er, janitor.
die **Haustür,** —, –en, street door, front door.
das **Heer,** –(e)s, –e, army.
die **Heeresmacht,** —, ¨e, army, troops.
heilig, *adj.*, sacred, holy.
die **Heimat,** —, –en, home native place.
die **Heimatſtadt,** —, ¨e, native city.
heiß, *adj.*, hot.
heißen,* *intr.*, to be called *or* named; das heißt, that is.
heiter, *adj.*, cheerful.
der **Held,** –en, –en, hero.
hell, *adj.*, bright, light; Helles, light-colored beer.
herauf=holen, bring up.
heraus=kommen* (ſein), come out.
herein=fallen* (ſein), "bite," be caught.
herein=kommen* (ſein), come in.
her=kommen* (ſein), come.
der **Herr,** –n, –en, gentleman, Sir, Mr.
herrlich, splendid, magnificent.
herüber=ſchallen* (*or weak*) (ſein), echo over.
hervor=ſchwanken (ſein), stagger forward.
das **Herz,** –ens, –en, heart.
herzlich, *adj.*, cordial, hearty.
heulen, howl.
heute, *adv.*, to-day.
heutig, *adj.*, to-day's; der –e Tag, this (very) day.
hier, *adv.*, here, now.
hierbei, *adv.*, in this connection.
hierdurch, *adv.*, by this (letter).
hierin, *adv.*, in this.
hiermit, *adv.*, with this.
der **Himmel,** –s, —, heaven, sky.
hin, *adv. and sep. pref.*; — und her, to and fro.
hinauf, *adv. and sep. pref.*, up.
hinauf=führen, lead up.

hinauf=laufen * (ſein), run up.
hinauf=ſteigen * (ſein), climb, go up.
hinaus=gehen * (ſein), go out.
hin=gehen * (ſein), go.
hin=ſehen, * look over.
hinter, *prep. and insep. pref.*, behind.
hinüber=ſehen*, look over.
hinunter=laufen * (ſein), run down.
hinunter=ſchicken, send down.
hinzu=fügen, add.
der **Hirt,** –en, –en, shepherd.
hoch (höher, höchſt), *adj.*, high; *adv.*, höchſt, highly, very.
die **Hochachtung,** —, esteem.
hochachtungsvoll, *adj.*, very respectfully.
hoffen, hope.
der **Hohenſtau'fe,** –n, –n, The Hohenstaufen (ruler).
holen, get, fetch, come for.
hölzern, *adj.*, wooden.
hören, listen, hear.
das **Hoſpiz',** –es, –e, hospice, inn.
das **Hotel',** –s, –s, hotel.
hübſch, *adj.*, pretty, charming.
der **Hügel,** –s, —, hill.
hundert, hundred.
der **Hunger,** –s, hunger.
hur'ra *or* **hurra,** *interj.*, hurrah; *as neut. noun*, shout, cheering.

I

ich, *pers. pron.*, I.
ihr, *poss. adj.*, her, their, its.
Ihr, your.
immatrikulie'ren, matriculate; ſich — laſſen, matriculate, enter university.
immer, *adv.*, always; — dunkler, darker and darker, more and more dark.
imponie'rend, *part. adj.*, imposing, impressive.
in, *prep.* (*w. dat. or acc.*), in, into, at, to, on, with.
indem, *conj.*, while, as.
die **Inſel,** —, –n, island.
das **Inſerat,** –(e)s, –e, advertisement.
intereſſant', *adj.*, interesting.
ſich **intereſſie'ren,** interest oneself, take an interest.
inzwiſchen, *adv.*, meanwhile.

J

ja, *adv.*, yes, indeed; — wohl, yes indeed.
die **Jagd,** —, –en, hunt.
der **Jäger,** –s, —, hunter.
das **Jahr,** –(e)s, –e, year.
der **Jahreswechſel,** –s, —, new year.
das **Jahrhundert,** –(e)s, –e, century.
der **Januar,** — *or* –(e)s, –e, January.
je, *adv.*, ever; — . . . deſto, the more . . . the more.
jeder, jede, jedes, *adj. or pron.*, each, every.
jedoch', however.
jetzt, *adv.*, now, then.
jung (¨er, ¨ſt), *adj.*, young.
der **Juni,** –(s), –(s), June.
der **Junimorgen,** –s, —, June morning.

K

der **Kaffee,** –s, coffee.

der Kai, –s, –s, quay, pier.
der Kaiſer, –s, —, emperor.
die Kajüte, —, –n, cabin.
der Kanal', –s, (English) Channel.
die Kano'ne, —, –n, cannon.
der Kanzler, –s, —, chancellor.
der Kapitän', –s, –e, captain.
die Kartoffel, —, –n, potato.
die Katze, —, –n, cat.
kaufen, buy.
kaum, *adv.*, hardly, scarcely.
kein, keine, kein, *adj.*, no, not a, not.
der Keller, –s, —, cellar.
der Kellner, –s, —, waiter.
kennen,* know; — lernen, become acquainted with.
die Kirche, —, –n, church.
der Kirchturm, –(e)s, ¨e, church-tower.
klar, *adj.*, clear.
die Klaſſe, —, –n, class.
das Klavier', –(e)s, –e, piano.
das Kleid, –(e)s, –er, dress, clothing.
die Kleidung, —, –en, clothing.
klein, *adj.*, small, little.
klingeln, ring.
der Kloſtertor-Bahnhof, Klostertor Station.
der Koffer, –s, —, trunk.
komiſch, *adj.*, comical, ludicrous.
das Komitee', –s, –s, committee.
die Komman'dobrücke, —, –n, bridge (on a vessel).
kommen* (ſein), come.
der Komponiſt', –en, –en, composer.
der König, –(e)s, –e, king.
das Königswort, –(e)s, –e, king's word.
können,* *mod. aux.*, can, be able.
das Kopfkiſſen, –s, —, pillow
der Korb, –(e)s, ¨e, basket.
die Kraft, —, ¨e, strength.
kräftig, *adj.*, strong, good.
der Kreis, –es, –e, circle.
kreuzen, cruise.
der Krieg, –(e)s, –e, war.
kriegen, get, receive.
das Kriegsſchiff, –(e)s, –e, man-of-war.
die Krone, —, –n, crown.
der Krug, –(e)s, ¨e, pitcher, mug "stein."
die Küche, —, –n, kitchen.
kühl, *adj.*, cool.
kühlen, *v.*, cool.
kühn, *adj.*, bold, startling.
das Kursbuch, –(e)s, ¨er, time-table, railway-guide.
kurz, *adj.*, short.
der Kuß, –ſſes, ¨ſſe, kiss.
die Küſte, —, –n, coast.
der Kutſcher, –s, —, coachman, driver.

L

lächeln, smile.
lächelnd, *part. adj.*, smiling.
lachen, laugh.
das Lager, –s, —, camp.
das Land, –(e)s, ¨er, land.
landen (ſein), land.
die Landung, —, –en, landing.
der Landungsplatz, –es, ¨e, wharf, landing-place, dock.
lang, *adj.*, long.
lange, *adv.*, long, for a long time.
die Länge, —, –n, length; der — nach, at full length.
langſam, *adj.*, slow.
laſſen,* leave, permit, have.

die Laſt, —, –en, load, burden.
laufen* (ſein, *sometimes* haben), run.
lauf, *adj.*, loud.
lauten, run, read.
läuten, ring; es läutet, the bell is ringing.
leben, live.
leben'dig, *adj.*, active, lively.
der **Lebenszweck**, –(e)s, –e, purpose of life, object of life.
legen, place, lay.
der **Lehrer**, –s, —, teacher.
leicht, *adj.*, easy, soft.
das **Leid**, –(e)s, sorrow; es tut mir leid, I am sorry.
leider, *adv.*, unfortunately, I am sorry to say.
Leipziger, *indecl. adj.*, of (*or* for) Leipzig.
leiſe, *adj.*, soft; *adv.*, in a low tone, softly.
leiſten, do, accomplish.
lernen, learn; kennen —, become acquainted with.
leſen,* read.
letzt, *adj.*, last, final.
das **Leuchtſchiff**, –(e)s, –e, light-ship.
die **Leute**, *pl.*, people.
lieb, *adj.*, dear.
lieben, love.
liebenswürdig, *adj.*, amiable, gracious, lovely.
die **Liebenswürdigkeit**, —, –en, kindness, amiability.
liegen,* lie, be.
links, *adv.*, at the left: zur Linken, on the left hand.
die **Literatur'**, —, –en, literature.
der **Löffel**, –s, —, spoon.
logie'ren (g = ʒ in *azure*), lodge, stay.
die **Lokomoti've**, —, –n, locomotive
löſen, solve; buy (a ticket).
die **Luft**, —, ¨e, air, breeze.

M

M. = Mark.
machen, make, do; eine Reiſe —, take a trip.
die **Macht**, —, ¨e, power.
mächtig, *adj.*, powerful, mighty.
das **Mädchen**, –s, —, girl.
mahlen,* grind.
majeſtä'tiſch, *adj.*, majestic.
mal, *adv.*, time(s), sometimes, just.
das **Mal**, –es, –e, time.
maleriſch, *adj.*, picturesque.
man, *indef. pron.*, one, some one, they.
manch, *adj.*, many, many a, some; –es, many things, some things.
der **Mann**, –(e)s, ¨er, man, husband.
das **Märchen**, –s, —, fairy-tale, story.
die **Mark**, —, mark; 2 Mark 50, 2 marks and 50 pfennigs.
der **Marktplatz**, –es, ¨e, market-place.
die **Maſchi'ne**, —, –n, machine, type-writer.
der **Maſchiniſt'**, –en, –en, engineer.
der **Maſt**, –es, –en, mast.
der **Matroſe**, –n, –n, sailor.
das **Meer**, –(e)s, –e, sea, ocean.
mehr, *adv.*, more, any longer.
mein, meine, mein, *adj.*, my.
meinetwegen, *adv.*, for all I care.
meinen, think, say.
die **Meinung**, —, –en, opinion,

meiſt, *adj.* (*superl. of* viel), most.
die **Menge,** —, –n, large number, crowd.
der **Menſch,** –en, –en, man, human being.
menſchenähnlich, *adj.*, human.
merken, notice, observe.
das **Meſſer,** –s, —, knife.
die **Miene,** —, –n, mien.
minus, *adv.*, less, minus.
die **Minu'te,** —, –n, minute, moment.
mit, *prep.* (*w. dat.*), *or sep. pref.*, with, in; *adv.*, in addition; along.
das **Mitglied,** –(e)s, –er, member.
mit=ſchicken, send with *or* along.
mit=ſenden,* send with *or* along.
der **Mittag,** –(e)s, –e, midday, noon.
mit=teilen, inform (*dat. of pers.*).
das **Mittelalter,** –s, Middle Ages.
der **Mittelpunkt,** –(e)s, –e, center.
mitten, *adv.*, in the middle; — durch, straight through.
mögen,* *mod. aux.*, may, like, be able, can.
möglich, *adj.*, possible, extreme; alles —e, every possible thing.
der **Monat,** –(e)s, –e, month.
morgen, *adv.*, to-morrow.
der **Morgen,** –s, —, morning.
die **Morgendämmerung,** —, –en, dawn.
die **Mozartſtraße,** —, Mozart Street.
müde, *adj.*, tired.
die **Mühle,** —, –n, mill.
der **Mühlſtein,** –(e)s, –e, mill-stone.
der **Müller,** –s, —, miller.
münden, empty.
die **Mündung,** —, –en, mouth.
das **Muſe'um,** –s, Muſeen, museum.
die **Muſik',** —, music, band.
müſſen,* *mod. aux.*, must, be necessary; be compelled, have to.
die **Mütze,** —, –n, cap.

N

nach, *prep.* (*w. dat.*), *also sep. pref.*, after, behind, to, towards; — und —, one by one, gradually.
nachdem, *conj.*, after.
nach=fragen, inquire.
nachher, *adv.*, subsequently.
nach=machen, imitate.
der **Nachmittag,** –(e)s, –e, afternoon; –s, in the afternoon.
die **Nachricht,** —, –en, news, piece of information.
nächſt, *adj.*, *superl. of* nah(e), next.
die **Nacht,** —, ¨e, night.
der **Nachtiſch,** –es, dessert.
der **Nacken,** –s, —, neck, back.
nah(e) (näher, nächſt), *adj.*, near, close.
die **Nähe,** —, –n, vicinity.
das **Nähere** (*adj inflect.*), details, particulars.
näher=treten* (ſein), approach, come in.
die **Nahrung,** —, nourishment, food.
namens, *adv.*, by name.
nämlich, *adv.*, namely.
das **National'gedicht,** –(e)s, –e, national poem.
die **Natur',** —, –en, nature.
das **Natur'kind,** –(e)s, –er, child of nature.
der **Natur'ſinn,** –(e)s, feeling for nature.

natür'lich, *adj.*, natural; *adv.*, of course.
der **Neffe,** –n, –n, nephew.
nehmen,* take, get.
nennen,* name.
das **Nest,** –(e)s, –er, nest, little town.
nett, *adj.*, nice, pleasant.
das **Netz,** –es, –e, net, rack.
neugierig, *adj.*, curious.
neunzig, ninety.
nicht, *adv.*, not, no; — wahr? haven't you? isn't it so?
der **Nichtraucher,** –s, —, no-smoking compartment.
nichts, *indecl. pron.*, nothing.
nieder-beugen, bow down.
niedrig, *adj.*, low.
nirgends, *adv.*, nowhere.
noch, *adv.*, yet, still; — etwas, anything (something) more; — nicht, not yet.
nochmals, *adv.*, again.
die **Nordgrenze,** —, –n, northern boundary.
nördlich, *adj.*, northern.
der **Nordo'sten,** –s, the Northeast.
die **Nordsee,** —, North Sea.
das **Norwegen,** –s, Norway.
der **November,** –(s), —, November.
nun, *adv.*, now, well.
nur, *adv.*, only, just.

O

ob, *conj.*, whether, if; **als —,** as if.
oben, *adv.*, above.
obgleich, *conj.*, although.
oder, *conj.*, or.
der **Ofen,** –s, ¨, stove.
offen, *adj.*, open.
öffentlich, *adj.*, public.
die **Offer'te,** —, –n, offer, application, reply.
der **Offizier',** –(e)s, –e, officer.
öffnen, open.
oft, *adv.*, often.
ohne, *prep.* (*w. acc.*), without.
ohnmächtig, *adj.*, powerless.
der **Onkel,** –s, —, uncle.
die **Ordnung,** —, –en, order.
die **Orgel,** —, –n, organ.
der **Osten,** –s, east.
der **Ozean',** –(e)s, –e, ocean.

P

das **Paar,** –(e)s, –e, pair; ein paar Zeilen, a few lines.
das **Papier',** –es, –e, paper.
der **Passagier'** (g = ʒ in *azure*), –(e)s, –e, passenger.
passen, suit, be convenient.
passie'ren (sein), occur, happen.
die **Pension'** [en *as in French*], —, –en, boarding house; volle —, board and room.
perfekt', *adj.*, perfect.
die **Person',** —, –en, person.
der **Perso'nenwagen,** –s, —, passenger car.
der **Perso'nenzug,** –(e)s, ¨e, passenger train, accommodation train.
pfeifen,* whistle.
der **Pfennig,** –(e)s, –e, pfennig.
das **Pferd,** –(e)s, –e, horse; zu — e on horseback.
Pfg. = Pfennig.
der **Pfiff,** –(e)s, –e, whistle.
die **Pflanze,** —, –n, plant.
pflegen, be accustomed.
der **Plan,** –(e)s, ¨e, plan.
der **Platz,** –es, ¨e, place, seat, square.

plötzlich, *adj.*, sudden.
plump, *adj.*, awkward.
plus, *adv.*, plus.
der **Portier'** (*French pron.*), –s, –s, porter, clerk.
die **Post,** —, –en, post-office, mail.
die **Postkarte,** —, –n, postal card.
postlagernd, *part. adj.*, poste restante, general delivery.
prächtig, *adj.*, beautiful, fine.
die **Potsdamerstraße,** —, Potsdam Street.
prachtvoll, *adj.*, splendid, fine.
praktisch, *adj.*, practical, convenient.
die **Preisangabe,** —, –n, statement of prices, price.
der **Preisunterschied,** –(e)s, –e, difference in price.
primitiv', *adj.*, primitive.
der **Profes'sor,** –s, –o'ren, professor.
das **Promena'dendeck,** –(e)s, –e, promenade deck.
prosit, *interj.*, your health.
pünktlich, prompt.

R

der **Rabatt',** –(e)s, discount.
das **Rathaus,** –es, ¨er, city hall.
das **Rätsel,** –s, —, riddle.
rauh, *adj.*, rough, wild.
recht, *adj.*, right; *adv.*, quite, very.
rechts, *adv.*, at the right; zur Rechten, on the right hand.
rege, *adj.*, lively, active.
regnen, rain.
rein, *adj.*, pure, clean.
die **Reise,** —, –n, journey, trip; auf der —, while traveling, for traveling; glückliche —, pleasant journey, *bon voyage*.
die **Reisedecke,** —, –n, traveling-blanket, steamer-rug.
das **Reiseerlebnis,** –sses, –sse, incident of travel.
reisen (sein, *sometimes* haben), travel, go.
der **Reisende** (*adj. inflect.*), traveler.
die **Reisetasche,** —, –n, traveling-bag.
reiten* (sein, *sometimes* haben), ride.
die **Reiterstatue,** —, –n, equestrian statue.
das **Restaurant',** –s, –s, restaurant.
retten, save.
richtig, *adj.*, right, correct.
die **Richtung,** —, –en, direction.
das **Riesengebirge,** –s, Giant Mountains.
der **Rinderbraten,** –s, —, roast beef.
rollen, roll.
die **Roßstraße,** —, Ross Street.
die **Rückfahrkarte,** —, –n, round-trip ticket.
rufen,* call.
ruhen, rest.

S

die **Sache,** —, –n, thing.
die **Sage,** —, –n, legend, saying.
sagen, say, tell.
der **Salon** [*pron. as in French*], –s, –s, saloon, drawing-room.
das **Salz,** –es, –e, salt.
salzig, *adj.*, salt.
sanft, *adj.*, soft, balmy.
sati'risch, *adj.*, satirical

der **Schaffner**, –s, —, guard, brakeman.
die **Schar**, —, –en, throng.
ſcharf, *adj.*, sharp.
ſchätzen, appreciate, esteem.
ſchauen, look, see.
ſchaukeln, rock, roll.
das **Schauſpiel**, –(e)s, –e, spectacle, play.
ſcheinen,* shine, seem.
ſchelmiſch, *adj.*, roguish.
ſchelten,* scold.
das **Schiff**, –(e)s, –e, ship.
der **Schiffsarzt**, –es, ¨e, ship's doctor.
ſchlafen,* sleep.
der **Schlafwagen**, –s, —, sleeping-car, sleeper.
ſchlagen,* strike, defeat.
ſchlau, *adj.*, shrewd.
der **Schleppdampfer**, –s, —, tug.
ſchlicht, *adj.*, plain, simple.
ſchließen,* close.
der **Schluß**, –ſſes, Schlüſſe, conclusion.
ſchnell, *adj.*, quick, prompt; — machen, hurry up.
der **Schnellzug**, –(e)s, ¨e, express.
das (Wiener) **Schnitzel**, –s, —, veal cutlet.
ſchon, *adv.*, already, now.
ſchön, *adj.*, beautiful, fine; *adv.*, very well.
der **Schornſtein**, –(e)s, –e, smokestack, chimney.
ſchreiben*, write.
die **Schreibmaſchine**, —, –n, typewriter.
der **Schriftſteller**, –s, —, author, literary man, writer.
der **Schritt**, –(e)s, –e, step.
die **Schule**, —, –n, school, college.
der **Schulfreund**, –(e)s, –e, school friend.
ſich **ſchützen**, protect one's self.
der **Schwanz**, –es, ¨e, tail.
ſchwenken, swing, wave.
ſchwer, *adj.*, hard, heavy.
das **Schwert**, –(e)s, –er, sword.
ſechzehnt, sixteenth.
ſechzig, sixty.
die **See**, —, –(e)n, sea.
die **Seele**, —, –n, soul.
der **Seeräuber**, –s, —, pirate.
die **Seereiſe**, —, –n, voyage.
ſehen,* see.
ſehr, *adv.*, very, very much, greatly.
ſein* (ſein), be, exist.
ſein, ſeine, ſein, *poss. adj. or pron.*, his, its.
ſeit, *prep. w. dat. or conj.*, since.
ſeitdem, *conj.*, since.
die **Seite**, —, –n, side.
ſeitens, *adv.*, on the part of, from.
ſelber, *indecl. intensive pron.*, self (myself, himself, etc.).
ſelbſt, *indecl. intensive pron.*, self; *adv.*, even.
ſelten, *adj.*, rare.
ſeltſam, peculiar, strange.
das **Seme'ſter**, –s, —, half-year, term.
ſenden* *or weak*, send.
der **September**, –(s), —, September.
die **Serie**, —, –n, series.
ſich **ſetzen**, seat one's self, sit down.
ſich, *indecl. refl. pron., dat. or acc., sing. or pl.*, himself, herself, itself, themselves; yourself, yourselves; each other, one another; **an —**, in themselves, in itself.

die **Sicht**, —, sight.
sieben, seven.
der **Sieg**, –(e)s, –e, victory.
das **Siegesdenkmal**, –s, –e *or* ¨er, monument of victory.
singen*, sing.
sinken* (sein), sink.
die **Sitte**, —, –n, custom.
der **Sitz**, –es, –e, seat.
sitzen,* sit.
skandina'visch, *adj.*, Scandinavian.
so, *adv.*, so, thus; — daß, so that.
sogar', *adv.*, even, indeed.
sogleich', immediately.
der **Sohn**, –(e)s, ¨e, son.
solch, such.
der **Soldat'**, –en, –en, soldier.
sollen, *mod. aux.*, shall, ought, be said, be to.
sonderbar, *adj.*, peculiar, unusual.
sondern, *conj.* (*after neg.*), but.
der **Sonnabend**, –s, –e, Saturday.
die **Sonne**, —, –n, sun.
der **Sonnenaufgang**, –(e)s, ¨e, sunrise.
der **Sonnenschein**, –(e)s, sunshine, sunlight.
das **Souterrain** [*pron. as in French*], –s, –s, basement story.
sowie, *adv.*, as well as.
spät, *adj.*, late.
spazie'ren, walk.
der **Spazier'gang**, –(e)s, ¨e, walk.
die **Speise**, —, –n, food.
die **Speisekarte**, —, –n, bill of fare.
der **Speisewagen**, –s, —, dining-car.
die **Spende**, —, –n, gift, offering.
spielen, play.
das **Spielzeug**, –(e)s, playthings, toys.
sprechen,* speak, see (in calling).
die **Stadt**, —, ¨e, city.
der **Städter**, –s, —, citizen, townsman.
das **Stadtviertel**, –s, —, quarter *or* part of town.
stark, *adj.*, strong, violent, sturdy.
stattlich, *adj.*, stately.
stehen,* stand, be.
steigen* (sein), mount, descend.
steil, *adj.*, steep.
der **Stein**, –(e)s, –e, stone.
stellen, place, put.
der **Stil**, –es, –e, style.
die **Straße**, —, –n, street; ein paar —n entfernt, a few blocks away.
der **Student'**, –en, –en, student.
die **Studen'tenzeit**, —, –en, student days.
der **Stuhl**, –(e)s, ¨e, chair.
die **Stunde**, —, –n, hour, lesson.
der **Sturm**, –(e)s, ¨e, storm.
stürmisch, stormy.
suchen, hunt, search for, look for.
der **Süden**, –s, —, south.
die **Suppe**, —, –n, soup.

T

der **Tag**, –(es), –e, day.
das **Tageblatt**, –(e)s, ¨er, journal.
das **Takelwerk**, –(e)s, rigging.
die **Tante**, —, –n, aunt.
das **Taschentuch**, –(e)s, ¨er, handkerchief.
die **Tasse**, —, –n, cup.
tätig, *adj.*, active, in use.
die **Tätigkeit**, —, –en, activity.
das **Tau**, –(e)s, –e, rope, cable.
tausend, thousand.

die Taxe, —, –n, fare.
der Teil, –(e)s, –e, part.
teil-nehmen,* — an (*w. dat.*), take part in.
der Teller, –s, —, plate.
teuer, *adj.*, dear, costly.
der Teufel, –s, —, devil.
die Thomaskirche, —, Church of St. Thomas, St. Thomas's.
der Thüringerhof, –(e)s, name of a restaurant in Leipzig.
tief, *adj.*, deep, profound, low.
die Tiefe, —, –n, depth.
das Tier, –(e)s, –e, animal.
das Tierepos, —, –epen, animal epic.
die Tierfabel, —, –n, animal story (fable).
die Tiergeſchichte, —, –n, animal [story.
der Tiſch, –es, –e, table.
toben, rage.
die Tochter, —, ¨, daughter.
der Tod, –(e)s, –e, death.
das Tor, –(e)s, –e, gate, door.
tot, *adj.*, dead.
töten, kill.
tragen,* carry, wear, bear.
der Trank, –(e)s, ¨e, drink.
treffen,* strike, smite, hit.
treiben,* pursue, study, drive.
die Treppe, —, –n, flight of stairs.
trinken,* drink.
das Trinkgeld, –(e)s, –er, gratuity, [tip.
trocknen, dry.
das Trottoir [*pron. as in French*], –s, e *or* –s, sidewalk.
tüchtig, *adj.*, able, thorough; *adv.*, hard, diligent.
tun,* do, put, take; es tut mir leid, I am sorry.
die Tür, —, –en, door.
das Tuten, –s, whistle, whistling.
typiſch, *adj.*, typical.

U

über, *prep.* (*w. dat. or acc.*), *sep. or insep. pref.*, over, across, about, via.
überall, *adv.*, everywhere.
überbringen,* deliver.
die Überfahrt, —, –en, passage.
überhaupt', *adv.*, in general.
überirdiſch, *adj.*, supernatural.
überlegen, think over, consider.
übermorgen, *adv.*, day after tomorrow.
übernehmen,* accept, take upon one's self.
überreichen, deliver.
überſchlagen,* wait over.
überſenden,* send.
die Überzeugung, —, –en, conviction, belief.
übrig, *adj.*, remaining, rest of.
das Ufer, –s, —, shore, bank.
die Uhr, —, –en, clock, o'clock.
um, *prep.* (*w. acc.*), *sep. or insep. pref.*, around, about; um zu (*with inf.*), in order to.
umgeben,* surround.
umgehend, *part. adj.*, by return mail.
umher'-laufen* (ſein), run around.
um-ſteigen* (ſein), change cars.
und, *conj.*, and, also; — wenn (auch), even if.
unentweiht, *part. adj.*, undefiled.
ungefähr, *adv.*, about.
ungehindert, *part. adj.*, unobstructed, unhindered, undisturbed.

ungelegen, *adj.*, inconvenient; — kommen, inconvenience.
ungepolſtert, *part. adj.*, uncushioned.
ungezwungen, *part. adj.*, informal.
unintereſſant', uninteresting.
die **Univerſität** [v *as in Eng.*], —, -en, university.
die **Univerſitäts'vorleſung,** —, -en, university lecture.
unmöglich, *adj.*, impossible.
unſichtbar, *adj.*, invisible.
unten, *adv.*, below.
unter, *prep.* (*w. dat. or acc.*), *sep. or insep. pref.*, under, among, with.
die **Unterhaltung,** —, -en, conversation. [ings.
unter=kommen* (ſein), find lodg-
das **Unterkommen,** -s, —, lodgings, accommodation.
unterſuchen, examine.
unterwegs', *adv.*, on the way.
unverhofft, *adj.*, unexpected.
unverzagt, dauntless, undismayed.
das **Unwohlſein,** -s, illness.
uralt, *adj.*, very old, ancient.
urſprüng'lich, *adj.*, original.

V

der **Vater,** -s, ¨, father.
das **Vaterland,** -(e)s, ¨er, native land.
die **Vaterſtadt,** —, ¨e, native city.
veranſtalten, organize, undertake.
verbinden,* bind, unite, oblige.
verbleiben* (ſein), remain.
verbringen,* spend.
verbunden, *part. adj.*, bound, obliged.
verehrt, *part. adj.*, honored, esteemed; -er Herr, Dear Sir.
der **Verein,** -(e)s, -e, union, society, club, fraternity.
die **Verfügung,** —, -en, disposal.
vergangen, *part. adj.*, past, last.
vergeſſen,* forget.
vergleichen,* compare.
verkehren, visit, associate.
der **Verlag,** -(e)s, press, publishing firm, publications.
verlangen, wish, require.
das **Verlangen,** -s, —, wish, demand.
verlaſſen,* leave.
vermögen,* be able, can.
vernehmen,* hear.
verſchaffen, procure, get.
verſchieden, *part. adj.*, different, various.
verſchmitzt, *adj.*, sly.
verſehen, *part. adj.*, provided.
verſichern (*dat. or acc.*), assure.
verſterben* (ſein), die.
der **Verſtorbene** (*adj. inflect.*), dead (person).
ſich **vertragen,*** agree, get on together.
vertraut, *part. adj.*, familiar.
verwandt, *part. adj.*, related.
der **Verwandte** (*adj. inflect.*), relative.
verzeichnen, record.
das **Verzeichnis,** -ſſes, -ſſe, index, catalog.
viel, *adj.*, much; *pl.*, many.
vielerlei, *adj.*, many sorts of.
vielleicht, *adv.*, perhaps.
vier, *num. adj.*, four.
vierzehn, *num. adj.*, fourteen.
das **Volk,** -(e)s, ¨er, people.

voll, *adj.*, full, complete.
vollenden, complete.
von, *prep.* (*w. dat.*), from, of, by, with, because of, concerning.
vor, *prep.* (*w. dat. or acc.*), *sep. pref.*, before, from, because of, at.
vorbei, *adv.*, past, over; an etwas (*dat. case*) —, past something.
vorbei-fahren * (sein), go past.
vorbei-gehen * (sein), go past.
vor-finden,* find.
vorig, *adj.*, last.
vor-kommen * (sein), seem, appear, occur.
vorläufig, for the present, (in the) meantime.
die **Vorlesung**, —, –en, lecture.
der **Vormittag**, –(e)s, –e, forenoon.
vorrätig, in stock.
vor-schlagen,* suggest, propose.
vor-stellen, introduce, imagine, represent.
der **Vortrag**, –(e)s, ¨e, lecture.
der **Vorzug**, –(e)s, ¨e, good quality, excellence.
vorzüglich, *adj.*, excellent, especial; mit —er Hochachtung, with the highest esteem.

W

der **Wagen**, –s, —, vehicle, carriage, car, wagon.
wählen, choose.
wahr, true.
während, *prep.* (*w. gen.*), during; *conj.*, while.
wahr-nehmen,* take advantage of.
der **Wald**, –(e)s, ¨er, forest.
wann, when.
warm, *adj.*, warm.
sich **wärmen**, warm one's self.
warten, wait.
die **Wartehalle**, —, –n, waiting-room.
warum, *adv.*, why.
was, *interrog. and rel. pron.*, what, which; — für, what sort of; (= etwas), something, some.
das **Wasser**, –s, —, water.
wecken, *tr.*, awaken.
weder, *conj.*, neither; — . . . noch, neither . . . nor.
wegen, *prep.* (*w. gen.*), on account of.
wehen, blow.
sich **wehren**, defend.
das **Weib**, –(e)s, –er, woman, wife.
weiblich, *adj.*, womanly, feminine.
der **Wein**, –(e)s, –e, wine.
die **Weise**, —, –n, manner, wise.
weise, *adj.*, wise.
weiß, *adj.*, white.
weit, *adj.*, far; —er, farther.
weiter-gehen* (sein), go on.
welch, *adj.*, *interrog. or rel. pron.*, which.
der **Welfe**, –n, –n; Duke Welf, the Guelf leader.
die **Welle**, —, –n, wave, sea.
wenig, *adj.*, little, few.
wenn, *conj.*, if, when; — auch, even if.
wer, *interrog. pron.*, who; *indef. rel. pron.*, whoever.
werden* (sein), *aux.* (*of voice and tense*), become, grow.
werfen,* throw, cast.
wert, *adj.*, worth, worthy, estimable.
wertvoll, valuable.
das **Wesen**, –s, —, being; ihr — treiben, be active, be abroad.

der **Westen,** –s, West.
die **Westgrenze,** —, –n, western boundary.
das **Wetter,** –s, —, weather.
der **Wicht,** –(e)s, –e *or* –er, wight, man.
wichtig, *adj.*, important.
wie, *adv.*, how, as.
wieder, *adv.*, again, back.
wieder-finden,* find again.
wiederholen, repeat.
wiedersehen,* see again.
Wiener, *indecl. adj.*, Viennese; das — Schnitzel, –s, —, veal cutlet.
wild, *adj.*, wild.
willkommen, *adj.*, welcome.
der **Wind,** –(e)s, –e, wind.
der **Windeshauch,** –(e)s, –e, breath of wind.
Winsperg, a German town, now Weinsberg.
der **Winter,** –s, —, winter.
die **Winternacht,** —, ¨e, winter night.
der **Winterſturm,** –(e)s, ¨e, winter storm.
wir, *pers. pron.*, we.
das **Wirken,** –s, activity, doings.
wirklich, *adj.*, true, real.
der **Wirrwarr,** –s, confusion, crowd.
der **Wirt,** –(e)s, –e, landlord.
wiſſen,* know.
wo, *adv. or conj.*, where, when.
die **Woche,** —, –n, week.
woher, *adv.*, whence.
wohin, *adv.*, whither, where.
wohl, *adv.*, well, indeed, doubtless, probably.
wohnen, live, reside.
das **Wohnzimmer,** –s, —, living room.
der **Wolf,** –(e)s, ¨e, wolf
das **Wölkchen,** –s, —, little cloud.
die **Wolke,** —, –n, cloud.
wollen,* *mod. aux.*, will, wish, intend, be about to.
womit, with what (*or* which).
worauf, *adv.*, whereupon.
das **Wort,** –(e)s, –e *or* ¨er, word, promise.
wovon, of what (*or* which.)
wozu, for what (*or* which), why.
wunderſchön, *adj.*, very beautiful.
wünſchen, wish.
die **Wurſt,** —, ¨e, sausage.
das **Würſtchen,** –s, —, sausage.
wüten, rage.

Z

zählen, count.
zehn, *num. adj.*, ten.
das **Zeichen,** –s, —, sign, signal.
zeigen, show; ſich —, show itself.
die **Zeile,** —, –n, line.
die **Zeit,** —, –en, time; eine — lang, for a while.
zeitraubend, taking (*or* wasting) time.
die **Zeitung,** —, –en, newspaper.
zerdeuteln, misinterpret.
zerdrehen, distort, pervert.
ziehen,* draw, pull.
das **Ziel,** –(e)s, –e, goal, destination.
ziemlich, *adv.*, somewhat.
das **Zimmer,** –s, —, room.
das **Zollamt,** –(e)s, ¨er, custom-house, custom-office.
das **Zollgebäude,** –s, —, customs-building, custom-house.
zollpflichtig, dutiable.
der **Zorn,** –(e)s, anger, wrath.

zu, *prep.* (*w. dat.*), *adv. or sep. pref.*, to, at, in, by, toward, with, on.
ſich zu=drehen, turn.
zuerſt, *adv.*, first.
zufrie'den, *adj.*, content, satisfied.
der Zug, –(e)s, ¨e, train, draft, draught, pull, procession.
der Zugführer, –s, —, conductor.
zugleich', *adv.*, at the same time.
zu=machen, close.
zunächſt, *adv.*, at first, next.
ſich zurecht=finden,* find one's way, make a thing out.
zurück=kehren (ſein), return.
zurück=kommen* (ſein), come back.
zurück=nehmen,* take back.
zu=rufen,* call.
zu=ſchreiben,* ascribe.
zuvor, before, previously.
ſich zu=wenden,* turn.
zwar, *adv.*, to be sure, indeed.
der Zweck, –(e)s, –e, purpose.
zwei, *num. adj.*, two.
zweimal, *adv.*, twice.
zweiſtündig, *adj.*, lasting two hours.
zweit, *num. adj.*, second; —er (Klaſſe), second class.
der Zwerg, –(e)s, –e, dwarf.
zwölf, *num. adj.*, twelve.
der Zylin'der, –s, —, silk (high) hat.

ENGLISH-GERMAN VOCABULARY.

A

a, an, ein.

ability, die Fähigkeit, —, -en.

able, fähig; be —, können,* imstande sein.*

aboard, an Bord; get — (a train), einsteigen* (sein); all —, Einsteigen!

about, *prep.*, um, über (*acc.*); *adv.*, herum, umher; (=approximately), ungefähr, etwa; be — to, im Begriff sein zu, eben wollen.

above, *prep.*, über (*dat. or acc.*); *adv.*, oben; the — mentioned, der obengenannte.

abroad, *adv.*, draußen; be —, im Ausland sein; (of spirits), ihr Wesen treiben.

abundant, reichlich.

abuse, mißbrauchen.

academic, akademisch.

accept, annehmen.*

access, der Eintritt, -(e)s, -e. [-s.

accommodation, das Unterkommen,

accommodation-train, der Personenzug, -(e)s, ¨e.

accompany, begleiten.

accompaniment, die Begleitung, —, -en.

accordingly, also, folglich.

account (= bill), die Rechnung, —, -en; (=report), der Bericht, -(e)s, -e; on — of, wegen (*gen.*).

accustom, gewöhnen; — to, gewöhnen an (*acc.*); —**ed,** gewohnt.

acquaint, bekannt machen; —**ed,** bekannt; be —ed with, kennen;* become —ed with, kennen lernen.

acquaintance, die Bekanntschaft, —, -en, der Bekannte (*adj. infl.*).

acquire, erwerben,* erlangen, gewinnen.*

across, *prep.*, über (*acc.*); *adv.*, herüber, hinüber.

act, handeln; — as if, tun* als ob.

active, tätig.

actor, der Schauspieler, -s, —.

actually, tatsächlich, in der Tat, wirklich.

"**ad loca**" = "to your seats."

add, hinzufügen.

address, die Adreſ'se, —, -n.

address, adressieren; (= speak to), anreden.

adjoining, anstoßend.

administer, verwalten.

admiration, die Bewunderung, —.

admire, bewundern.

admit, zulassen,* aufnehmen*; (= confess), zugeben.*

adorn, schmücken.

adult, der Erwachsene (*adj. infl.*).

advance, fortschreiten* (sein); —**d,** vorgeschritten, hervorragend.

advantage, der Vorteil, -(e)s, -e.

adventure, das Abenteuer, –s, —.
advertisement, die Anzeige, —, –n; das Inſerat', –(e)s, –e.
affair, die Angelegenheit, —, –en; die Sache, —, –n; die Geſchichte, —, –n; a huge —, ein mächtiges Ding.
afraid, be —, fürchten, ſich fürchten.
after, *prep.*, nach (*dat.*); *adv.*, nachher, darauf; *conj.*, nachdem; — all, doch.
afternoon, der Nachmittag, –(e)s, –e.
afterwards, nachher, ſpäter.
again, wieder, wiederum, nochmals.
against, gegen.
age, das Alter, –s, —; of —, mündig.
aged, alt, greis.
agent, der Beamte (*adj. infl.*).
agree, — with one (of food, etc.), einem bekommen* (ſein).
agreeable, angenehm, freundlich.
ah! *interj*, ah! ach!
ahead, *adv.*, voraus, voran.
aid, die Hilfe, —; der Beiſtand, –(e)s.
aid, helfen* (*dat.*).
ail, what —s thee? was fehlt dir?
aim, der Zweck, –(e)s, –e; — in life, der Lebenszweck.
air, die Luft, —, ¨e; (= appearance), das Ausſehen, –s; (= mood), die Stimmung, —, –en.
airy, luftig.
Alaska, das Alaska, –s.
alike, gleich.
all, *adj. and pron.*, all; (= whole), ganz; not at —, gar nicht, — kinds of, allerlei.
allow, erlauben (*dat. of pers.*).
all-powerful, allgewaltig.
almost, faſt, beinahe.
alone, allein, einzeln.
along, — the river, am Fluß (*or* den Fluß) entlang; go —, mit-gehen.*
aloud, laut.
Alps, die Alpen (*pl.*).
already, ſchon.
Alsace, das Elſaß, — *or* –ſſes; — and Lorraine, Elſaß-Lothringen.
also, auch, ebenfalls, gleichfalls.
although, obgleich.
alumnus (of student fraternity), der alte Herr, –n, –en.
always, immer, ſtets.
America, das Ame'rika, –s.
American, der Amerika'ner, –s, —; die Amerika'nerin, —, –nen.
American, *adj.*, amerika'niſch.
among, *prep.*, unter (*dat. or acc.*).
ancestor, der Ahn, –en, –en; der Vorfahr, –s *or* –en, –en.
ancient, alt, uralt.
and, und; — so, alſo.
anger, der Zorn, –(e)s.
angry, zornig, böſe.
animal, das Tier, –(e)s, –e; — story, die Tiergeſchichte, —, –n.
animated, belebt.
annihilate, vernichten.
another, ein anderer; (= one more), noch ein; one —, einander.
answer, die Antwort, —, –en.
answer, antworten, erwidern.
antiquated, veraltet.
anxiety, die Angſt, —, ¨e; das Bangen, –s.
anxious, ängſtlich, beſorgt; be —, [Angſt haben.
any, ein, irgend ein, irgend welch;

not —, kein; (= every), jeder; at — time, zu jeder Zeit; — too, allzu.

apartment, die Wohnung, —, -en; die Eta'ge [g = *z in azure*], —, -n.

appeal, appellie'ren (an); ſich wenden* (an).

appear, erſcheinen* (ſein); (= seem), ſcheinen.

appearance, die Erſcheinung, —, -en; das Erſcheinen, -s.

appetite, der Appetit', -(e)s, -e.

apple, der Apfel, -s, ¨-.

applicant, der Bewerber, -s, —.

application, der Fleiß, -(e)s; die Hingabe, —.

appoint, beſtimmen, ernennen* (zu).

appreciate, ſchätzen, würdigen.

approach, nahen (ſein), ſich nähern.

approve (of), billigen.

April, der April', — *or* -s, -e.

area, der Flächeninhalt, -(e)s, -e; das Areal', -(e)s, -e.

arise (= get up), auf-ſtehen* (ſein), ſich erheben*; (= begin), entſtehen* (ſein).

aristocratic, ariſtokratiſch.

arithmetic, die Arithmetik' (*or* —me'tik), —; das Rechnen, -s.

arm, der Arm, -(e)s, -e; (= weapon), die Waffe, —, -n.

arm, bewaffnen.

armor, die Rüſtung, —, -en.

army, das Heer, -(e)s, -e; die Armee', —, -(e)n.

around, *prep.*, um (*acc.*), an (*dat. or acc.*); *adv.*, herum, umher.

arrange, ein-richten.

arrest, verhaften, arretie'ren.

arrival, die Ankunft, —, ¨-e.

arrive, an-kommen* (ſein).

art, die Kunſt, —, ¨-e.

artist, der Künſtler, -s, —.

artistic, künſtleriſch.

article, der Artikel, -s, —; — of clothing, das Kleidungsſtück, -(e)s, -e.

as (*temporal*), als, wie, da; (*causal*), da; — . . . —, ſo . . . wie (als); — if, als ob (wenn); — much . . . —, ſo viel . . . wie; — well — (= and also), und auch.

ascribe, zu-ſchreiben.*

ashore, am (ans) Ufer; am (ans Land).

ask, fragen, an-fragen; (= request), bitten*; — for, bitten um (*w. acc.*).

asleep, im Schlafe; be —, ſchlafen*; fall —, einſchlafen* (ſein).

assemble, verſammeln, ſich verſammeln.

assent, die Zuſtimmung, —, -en.

assert, behaupten.

assertion, die Behauptung, —, -en.

association, die Erinnerung, —, -en.

assure, verſichern (*dat. or acc.*).

astonish, be —ed, erſtaunen.

astonishment, das Erſtaunen, -s; in —, erſtaunt.

asunder, tear —, zerreißen.*

at, an, auf (*dat. or acc.*), bei, zu (*dat.*), um (*acc.*), — home, zu Hauſe; — your house, bei Ihnen; — seven (o'clock), um ſieben (Uhr).

atmosphere, die Atmoſphä're, —, -n; die Luft, —, ¨-e.

attack, an-greifen.*

attain (to), erreichen.

attend, bei=wohnen (*dat.*), beſuchen; — to, beſorgen.
attention, die Aufmerkſamkeit, —, –en.
attentive, aufmerkſam; watch — ly, genau auf=paſſen.
Attila (king of the Huns), Etzel.
attractive, anziehend.
attributable, is — to the ability, beruht auf der Fähigkeit.
Austria, das Öſt(er)reich, –s.
average, der Durchſchnitt, –(e)s, –e; *in compounds,* Durchſchnitts=; — age, das Durchſchnittsalter, –s.
await, erwarten, warten auf (*acc.*); Death —s them, der Tod iſt ihnen beſtimmt, der Tod wartet ihrer.
awake, *adj.*, wach.
awake, *v.* (*trans.*), wecken, auf=wecken; (*intrans.*), erwachen, auf=wachen (ſein).
aware, become — of, gewahren.
away, *adv.*, fort, weg; (= distant) entfernt.
awe, die Ehrfurcht, —.
ax, die Axt, —, ¨e.

B

back, der Rücken, –s, —.
back, *adv.*, zurück.
bad, ſchlecht, böſe, ſchlimm.
badge, das Zeichen, –s, —.
baggage, das Gepäck, –(e)s; — room, der Gepäckraum, –(e)s, ¨e.
balcony, der Balkon' [*pron. as in French*], –(e)s, –s *or* –e; der Söller, –s, —.
ball, der Ball, –(e)s, ¨e; glass —, die Glaskugel, —, –n; (on tower), der Knauf, –(e)s, ¨e.
Baltic (Sea), die Oſtſee, —.
band, die Schar, —, –en; die Bande, —, –n; (= music) die Muſik', —.
banishment, die Verbannung, —, –en.
banner, die Fahne, —, –n. [¨er.
banquet, das Feſtmahl, –(e)s, –e *or*
banqueting, das Schmauſen, –s.
bare, *adj.*, kahl, bloß.
barley, die Gerſte, —, –n; — juice, der Gerſtenſaft, –(e)s.
barometer, das (*or* der) Barome'ter, –s, —.
base, *v.*, gründen; is —d, beruht (auf); —d upon, beruhend auf.
basement (story), das Souterrain [*pron. as in French*], –s, –s.
bashful, ſchüchtern.
bashfulness, die Schüchternheit, —.
basis, der Grund, –(e)s, ¨e; die Grundlage, —, –n; on the — (of), auf Grund (*with gen.*).
basket, der Korb, –(e)s, ¨e. [–e.
battleship, das Kriegsſchiff, –(e)s,
Bavaria, das Bayern, –s; southern —, Südbayern.
Bavarian, *adj.*, bayriſch.
bay, die Bucht, —, –en; die Bai, —, –en.
bay-window, der Erker, –s, —.
be, ſein* (ſein); (= become) werden; there is (are), es iſt (ſind), es gibt; I am to, ich ſoll; that is (= i. e.), das heißt (d. h.); how are you? wie geht es Ihnen?
bear, der Bär, –en, –en.
bear (a child), gebären.*
beard, der Bart, –(e)s, ¨e.
bearings, get one's —, ſich orientie'ren.
beast, das Tier, –(e)s, –e.

beat, ſchlagen,* pochen.
beautiful, ſchön.
because, weil.
become, werden* (ſein).
bed, das Bett, –(e)s, –en.
bedroom, das Schlafzimmer, –s, —.
beer, das Bier, –(e)s, –e.
before, *prep.*, vor (*dat. or acc.*); *conj.*, ehe, bevor; *adv.*, voran, (time) früher, vorher, eher, ſchon; many years — (ago), vor vielen Jahren.
beg (for), bitten* (um).
begin, an=fangen,* beginnen.*
beginning, der Anfang, –(e)s, ¨e.
beguile, verkürzen.
behind, *prep.*, hinter (*dat. or acc.*); *adv.*, hinten.
behold, erblicken, an=ſehen.*
being, das Weſen, –s, —.
belabor, durch=prügeln.
Belgian, *adj.*, belgiſch.
Belgium, das Belgien, –s.
belief, der Glaube, –ns. [*pers.*).
believe, glauben, trauen (*dat. of*
bell, die Glocke, —, –n; (small —) die Klingel, —, –n; the — is ringing, es läutet.
belong, gehören, an=gehören (*dat.*).
beloved, beliebt, geliebt.
below, *prep.*, unter (*dat. or acc.*); *adv.*, unten.
bench, die Bank, —, ¨e.
beside, *prep.*, neben (*dat. and acc.*).
besides, *prep.*, außer (*dat.*); *adv.*, außerdem', dazu'.
besiege, belagern.
best, *adj.*, beſt; *adv.*, am beſten; make the — of it (= put up with), fürlieb' nehmen.*
betake, — oneself, ſich begeben.*
bethink, — oneself, ſich beſinnen.*
better, beſſer. [zwiſchen.
between, *adv.*, dazwi'ſchen; *prep.*,
bid, — good-by, adieu' [adjöh'] (*or* Lebewohl) ſagen. [–en.*
bill (= account), die Rechnung, —,
bill-of-fare, die Speiſekarte, —, –n. [den.
bind, binden*; (of books) ein=bin=
binomial, binomiſch.
bird, der Vogel, –s, ¨.
birthday, der Geburtstag, –(e)s, –e.
black, ſchwarz, — Forest, der Schwarzwald, –(e)s.
blackboard, die Wandtafel, —, –n.
bleak, öde.
blessing, der Segen, –s, —.
block (= distance between streets), die Straße, —, –n.
blonde, blond.
blood, das Blut, –(e)s.
blood pudding (kind of sausage), die Blutwurſt, —, ¨e.
blow, der Schlag, –(e)s, ¨e; der Hieb, –(e)s, –e.
blow (of wind), wehen.
blue, blau.
board (= food), das Eſſen, –s; die Koſt, —; — and room, (volle) Penſion' [en *as in French*]; on — (a ship), an Bord.
board, — a train, ein=ſteigen* (ſein) in (*w. acc.*).
boat, das Boot, –(e)s, –e *or* ¨e; das Schiff, –(e)s, –e.
body, der Körper, –s, —; dead — die Leiche, —, –n; — of water, das Gewäſſer, –s, —; — of teachers, die Lehrerſchar, —, –en; — of school inspectors, das Scholarchat', –es, –e.

Bohemian, böhmiſch.
book, das Buch, –(e)s, ¨er; — trade, der Buchhandel, –s.
booth, die Bude, —, –n.
both, beide; — . . . and, ſowohl . . . als (auch).
bottle, die Flaſche, —, –n.
bound, begrenzen.
boundary, die Grenze, —, –n.
bow, die Verbeugung, —, –en.
bow, ſich verbeugen; — down (*trans.*) nieder-beugen.
box, die Schachtel, —, –n; (large —) der Kaſten, –s, —; (of cab) der Bock, –(e)s, ¨e. [–n, –n.
boy, der Knabe, –n, –n; der Junge,
bracelet, das Armband, –(e)s, ¨er.
brain, das Gehirn, –(e)s, –e; throng his —, ſeine Phantaſie erfüllen.
brakeman, der Schaffner, –s, —.
branch, der Zweig, –(e)s, –e; (of study) das Fach, –(e)s, ¨er.
brave, tapfer, mutig.
break, brechen*; — off, ab-brechen.*
break (of day), der Tagesanbruch, –(e)s.
breakfast, das Frühſtück, –(e)s, –e, fork —, das Gabelfrühſtück.
breast, die Bruſt, —, ¨e.
breath, der Atem, –s; — of wind, der Windeshauch, –(e)s, –e.
breathe, atmen.
breeze, die Luft, —, ¨e; das Lüftchen, –s, —.
bridge, die Brücke, —, –n; die Kommandobrücke.
bright, hell.
brilliant, glänzend.
bring, bringen;* — in, herein-bringen; — up, herauf-bringen; (of gangway) an-legen.
broad, breit; — day(light), heller Tag.
brook, der Bach, –(e)s, ¨e.
brother, der Bruder, –s, ¨.
brown, braun.
Bruin, Braun.
Brussels, Brüſſel.
"bummel," der Bummel, –s, —.
build, bauen; — on, an-bauen.
building, das Gebäude, –s, —; der Bau, –s, –e; — law, das Baugeſetz, –(e)s, –e.
bulletin, — board, das ſchwarze Brett, –(e)s, –er.
bundle, das Bündel, –s, —.
burden, die Laſt, —, –en.
burn, brennen*; — down; *intr.*, ab-brennen* (ſein).
Burschenschaft (student society), die Burſchenſchaft, —, –en.
bush, der Buſch, –es, ¨e; —es (*collective noun*), das Gebüſch, –es, –e.
business, das Geſchäft, –(e)s, –e; — letter, der Geſchäftsbrief, –(e)s, –e; — portion (of town), das Geſchäftsviertel, –s, —; — of renting a room, das Mietsgeſchäft.
busy, beſchäftigt.
but, *prep.*, außer (*dat.*), nothing —, nichts als; *conj.* aber, allein, ſondern (cf. Gram. Notes, 49 c).
buy, kaufen; (of railway tickets), löſen.
by, *prep.*, bei, von, mit (*dat.*), an, neben (*dat. or acc.*), durch (*acc.*); *adv.* (= near), dabei, daran; (= past), vorbei; — Monday, bis (zum) Montag; — way of, über.

C

cab, die Droſchke, —, –n.

cabman, der (Droſchken)kutſcher, –s, —.

cabin (on a vessel), die Kajü'te, [—, –n.

café, das Café, –s, –s.

calendar, der Kalen'der, –s, —.

call, der Ruf, –(e)s, –e; (= visit), der Beſuch, –(e)s, –e.

call, rufen*; (= name), nennen*; (= visit), beſuchen; — for, ab=ho=len; — out, rufen,* aus=rufen*; — together, zuſammen=rufen*; — to (some one), (einem) zu=rufen*; — (a meeting) to order, eröffnen; —ed, genannt, namens, mit Na=men.

calm, ruhig.

camp, das Lager, –s, —.

canal, der Kanal, –(e)s, –äle.

can, können*; vermögen.*

candidate, der Kandidat', –en, –en.

candle, das Licht, –(e)s, –e; die Kerze, —, –n.

cannon, die Kano'ne, —, –n.

cap, die Mütze, —, –n; — of dark=ness, die Tarnkappe, —, –n.

capital (= city), die Hauptſtadt, —, ¨e.

captain, der Kapitän' –(e)s, –e.

captive, der Gefangene (*adj. infl.*); hold —, gefangen halten*; take —, gefangen nehmen.*

car (= railway-carriage), der (Eiſen=bahn)wagen, –s, —.

carbuncle, der Karfun'kel, –s, —.

card, die Karte, —, –n; der Zettel, –s, —; visiting —, die Beſuchs=karte.

care, for all I —, meinetwegen.

careful, ſorgfältig.

carpenter, der Zimmermann, –s, ¨er *or* –leute.

carriage-door, der Torweg, –(e)s, –e; die Haustür, —, –en.

carry, tragen,* bringen*; — off (away), weg=tragen, entführen; — out (= execute), aus=führen.

case, der Fall, –(e)s, ¨e; (at law), die Sache, —, –n; der Prozeß, –zeſſes, –zeſſe; in any —, jeden=falls.

cast, werfen.*

castle, das Schloß, –ſſes, ¨ſſer.

cat, die Katze, —, –n.

catch, fangen*; — sight of, er=blicken; be caught (= "bite"), herein=fallen* (ſein).

cathedral, der Dom, –(e)s, –e.

cattle, das Vieh, –(e)s.

cause, die Urſache, —, –n; in her —, für ihre Sache.

cause, verur'ſachen, machen.

cease, auf=hören.

celebrate, feiern; —d, berühmt.

celebration, die Feier, —, –n; "Doctor-—," der Doktorſchmaus, –es, ¨e; die Doktorkneipe, —, –n.

cellar, der Keller, –s, —.

cemetery, der Friedhof, –(e)s, ¨e.

center, der Mittelpunkt, –(e)s, –e; das Centrum, –s, **–en.**

central, *adj.*, mittler; — part, der Mittelpunkt, –(e)s, –e; — Ger=many, das Mitteldeutſchland, –s.

centralization, die Centraliſation', —. [–e.

century, das Jahrhun'dert, –(e)s,

certain, ſicher, gewiß.

chain, die Kette, —, –n.

chair, der Stuhl, –(e)s, ¨e.

chairman, der Vorſitzende (*adj infl.*).

champion, der Verteidiger, –s, —; der Kämpe, –n, –n.
chancellor, der Kanzler, –s, —.
change, ändern, sich ändern; — cars, um=steigen* (sein).
Channel, der Kanal, –(e)s, ¨e.
chapel, die Kapelle, —, –n.
chapter, das Kapi'tel, –s, —.
character, der Charak'ter, –s, –te're.
characteristic, charakteri'stisch.
charge, die Pflege, —; die Aufsicht, —.
Charles, Karl; — the Great (Charlemagne), Karl der Große.
charm, entzücken.
charming, reizend, entzückend.
chase, die Jagd, —, –en.
chat, plaudern.
cheap, billig.
check (baggage), auf=geben.*
cheerful, heiter, freundlich.
cheese, der Käse, –s, —.
chief, — advantage, der Hauptvorteil, –(e)s, –e; — weight, das Hauptgewicht, –(e)s, –e.
child, das Kind, –(e)s, –er; — of nature, das Natur'kind.
childhood, die Kindheit, —.
choice, die Wahl, —, –en.
choose, wählen, aus=suchen.
Christian, der Christ, –en, –en.
Christmas, die Weihnachten (*plur.*); — day, der Weihnachtstag; — eve, der Weihnachtsabend; — present, das Weihnachtsgeschenk; — room, das Weihnachtszimmer, die Weihnachtsstube; — song, das Weihnachtslied.
church, die Kirche, —, –n.
church-tower, der Kirchturm, –(e)s, ¨e.
circle, der Kreis, –es, –e.
citizen, der Bürger, –s, —.
city, die Stadt, —, ¨e.
city-hall, das Rathaus, –(e)s, ¨er.
civil, — service, die (Civil')verwaltung, —, –en.
claim, der Anspruch, –(e)s, ¨e; lay — to, in Anspruch nehmen.*
clasp, — hands, sich die Hand (*or* Hände) geben.*
class, die Klasse, —, –n; (at university), die Hörer (*plur.*); — in Gothic, die Hörer im Gotischen.
classic, der Klassiker, –s, —.
clatter, klappern.
clean, rein.
clear, klar, rein.
cleft, die Spalte, —, –n.
clerk (of hotel), der Portier [*pron. as in French*], –s, –s.
cleverness, die Schlauheit, —; die Klugheit, —.
Cleves, Kleve.
climate, das Klima, –s, –ta *or* –te.
climb, steigen* (sein), klettern (sein *and* haben).
clink, — glasses, an=stoßen.*
clock, die Uhr, —, –en; at twelve (o'clock), um zwölf (Uhr).
close, dicht, nahe, eng, genau; — at hand, vor der Tür; — to, dicht bei.
close, schließen.* zu=machen.
clothes, die Kleider (*neut. plur.*).
clothing, die Kleidung, —, –en; die Kleider.
cloud, die Wolke, —, –n; little —, das Wölkchen, –s, —.
club, die Keule, —, –n; (= society), der Verein', –(e)s, –e; die Gesellschaft, —, –en.

clumsy, plump, ungeſchickt.
coarse, grob.
coast, die Küſte, —, -n.
coat, der Rock, -(e)s, ¨e.
coffee, der Kaffee, -s.
coffin, der Sarg, -(e)s, ¨e.
cold, kalt.
collection, die Sammlung, —, -en.
college, das Kolleg', -s, -ien; das ‚College' [*Eng. pron.*], —, -s.
Cologne (on the Rhine), Köln (am Rhein).
color (blush), erröten (ſein).
colored, farbig, bunt; (many —) bunt.
colt, das Füllen (*or* Fohlen), -s, —.
combat, der Kampf, -(e)s, ¨e; der Streit, -(e)s, -e.
come, kommen* (ſein); — by, vorbei-kommen; — out, heraus-kommen; — up, herauf-kommen; — up to one, auf einen zu-kommen.
comfortable, bequem, behaglich; make oneself —, ſich es bequem machen.
command, der Befehl, -(e)s, -e.
command, befehlen.*
commence, an-fangen*, beginnen*.
commend, empfehlen.*
commerce, der Handel, -s.
commercial, (*in compounds*) Handels-; — highway, die Verkehrsſtraße, —, -n.
commissioner, der Kommiſſar', -(e)s, -e.
commit (= entrust), an-vertrauen (*dat. of pers.*).
committee, der Ausſchuß, -ſſes, ¨ſſe; das Komitee', -s, -s.
communicate, mit-teilen (*dat. of pers.*).
communication, die Mitteilung, —, -en.
communion, der Verkehr, -(e)s; der Umgang, -(e)s; sit in —, Verkehr pflegen.*
community, die Gemeinde, —, -n.
companion, der Gefährte, -n, -n.
company, die Geſellſchaft, —, -en.
comparatively, verhältnismäßig.
compare, vergleichen* (to = mit).
comparison, der Vergleich, -(e)s, -e.
compartment, der Abteil, -(e)s, -e; das Coupé, -s, -s.
compassion, das Mitleid, -(e)s.
compel, zwingen.*
complaint, die Klage, —, -n.
complete, *adj.*, völlig, vollſtändig.
complete, *v.*, vollenden; (of college course) durch-machen, abſolvie'-ren.
completion, die Vollendung, —, -en; der Schluß, -ſſes, ¨ſſe.
composer, der Komponiſt', -en, -en.
composition (= theme), der Aufſatz, -es, ¨e; (= act of writing), die Abfaſſung, —, -en.
comprehension, das Verſtändnis, -niſſes, -niſſe.
comrade, der Kamerad', -en, -en.
conception, die Auffaſſung (die Vorſtellung), —, -en; die Idee', —, -(e)n.
concern, betreffen,* an-gehen.*
concert, das Konzert', -(e)s, -e.
concert-garden, der Konzert'garten, -s, —.
conclude, ſchließen,* ab-ſchließen; (= resolve) beſchließen; —d (of story, etc.) Schluß.
conclusion, der Schluß, -ſſes, ¨ſſe.
condemn, verurteilen.

condition, die Bedingung, —, -en; (= state) der Zustand, -(e)s, ¨e; on —, unter der Bedingung.

conduct, das Benehmen, -s; das Betragen, -s.

conductor, der Zugführer, -s, —.

confederation, das Bündnis, -nisses, -nisse; der Bund, -(e)s, ¨e; die Verbindung, —, -en.

confusion, der Wirrwar, -s; die Verwirrung, —, -en.

congratulate, beglückwünschen, gratulie'ren (*dat.*; upon = zu).

congratulation, der Glückwunsch, -es, ¨e.

connect, verbinden.*

conquer, besiegen.

conqueror, der Sieger, -s, —; der Eroberer, -s, —.

conscience, das Gewissen, -s, —.

conscientious, gewissenhaft.

consent, die Einwilligung, —, -en; die Zustimmung, —, -en.

consent, *v.*, ein=willigen.

conservatory, das Konservato'rium, -(s), -ien.

consider, erwägen*; nach=denken* über (*acc.*); für . . . halten*; be —ed, gelten* (für).

considerable, viel, bedeutend, beträchtlich.

consist, bestehen*; — of, bestehen aus.

constitution, die Verfassung, —, [-en.

construction, die Konstruktion', —, -en; — of houses (buildings), der Häuserbau, -(e)s.

consume, verzehren.

contain, enthalten*; — one's self, an sich halten.*

continual, fortwährend, unaufhör=[lich.

continue (*trans.*), fort=setzen; (*intr.*) fort=fahren,* fort=gehen,* weiter=gehen:* — to live, fort=leben; —d (of story, etc.), Fortsetzung.

contrast, der Gegensatz, -es, ¨e.

controversy, der Streit, -(e)s, -e.

convenient, bequem, praktisch.

conversation, die Unterhaltung, —, -en.

converse, sich unterhalten.*

convince, überzeugen.

cool, kühl. [lassen.*

cool (of wrath), sich kühlen, nach=

cordial, herzlich.

corner, die Ecke, —, -n; — house, das Eckhaus; — room, das Eckzimmer.

corps (student society), das Korps [*pron. as in French*], —, —.

correct, richtig.

correspond, korrespondie'ren; — to, entsprechen* (*dat.*).

cost, kosten.

council, der Rat, -(e)s.

countless, zahllos.

country, das Land, -(e)s, ¨er *or* -e; in the —, auf dem Lande; in this —, in diesem Lande; hier zu Lande.

courage, der Mut, -(e)s.

course, der Lauf, -(e)s, ¨e; der Verlauf, -(e)s; (of a school) der Kursus, —, — *or* Kurse; der Lehrgang, -(e)s, ¨e; in the — of, im Laufe (*gen.*), während (*gen.*); of —, natür'lich, selbstverständ'lich.

court, der Hof, -(e)s, ¨e; at —, am

court-house, das Rathaus, -es, ¨er.

Hofe; to —, zu Hofe.

cousin, der Vetter, -s, -n; die Cousi'ne, —, -n.

cover, decken, bedecken, belegen; —ed with pictures, bemalt.
cow, die Kuh, —, ¨e.
coward, der Feigling, -(e)s, -e.
cowardice, die Feigheit, —.
create, erschaffen,* ernennen.*
creep, kriechen.*
critical, kritisch.
criminal, der Verbrecher, -s, —.
crooked, krumm.
cross, fahren* über (*w. acc.*), kreuzen.
crow, die Krähe, —, -n.
crowd, die Menge, —, -n; die Schar, —, -en. [drängt voll von.
crowd, drängen; —ed with, ge-
cruel, grausam.
cruise, kreuzen.
cry, schreien,* (= call out) rufen.*
cultivate, aus-bilden; pflegen.
culture, die Kultur', —, -en; die Bildung, —, -en.
cultured, gebildet.
cunning, schlau; (= pretty) niedlich.
cup, die Tasse, —, -n.
curiosity, die Neugierde, —.
curious, neugierig.
curriculum, der Lehrplan, -(e)s, ¨e.
cushionless, ungepolstert.
custody, die Aufsicht, —, die Verwahrung, —; die Hut, —.
custom, die Sitte, —, -n; die Gewohnheit, —, -en.
customary, üblich, gewöhnlich, gebräuchlich.
custom-house, das Zollamt, -(e)s, ¨er; das Zollhaus, -es, ¨er.
cut, schneiden*; — out (of clothes, etc.), zu-schneiden*; — through, durch-schneiden.*
cutting (of classes), das Schwänzen, -s.
cycle, der Cyklus, —, -klen.

D

daily, täglich.
dance, der Tanz, -es, ¨e.
dance, tanzen; — out, hinaus-tanzen (sein).
dangerous, gefährlich.
Danube, die Donau, —.
dare, wagen.
dark, dunkel; —er and —er, immer dunkler.
date, das Datum, -(s), Data *or* Daten; at a later —, später.
daughter, die Tochter, —, ¨.
dawn, die Morgendämmerung, —.
day, der Tag, -(e)s, -e; — after tomorrow, übermorgen; — before yesterday, vorgestern.
dead, tot.
deal, a great — of, sehr viel, eine große Menge.
dealings (= intercourse), der Umgang, -(e)s; have — with, verkehren mit, Umgang haben mit.
dear, lieb, teuer; (= expensive), teuer, kostspielig; — Sir (in letters), geehrter (*or* verehrter) Herr.
death, der Tod, -es.
death-bed, das Sterbebett, -(e)s, -en.
decay, der Verfall, -(e)s.
deceased, tot, verstorben.
deceitful, betrügerisch, arg.
December, der Dezember, -(s), —.
decide, entscheiden*; (= determine), beschließen,* sich entschließen*; beraten.*

decision, der Entſchluß, -ſſes, ¨ſſe.
deck, das Deck, -(e)s, -e; on —, auf Deck.
declare, kund-geben,* erklären.
decorate, ſchmücken, putzen.
deep, tief.
defeat, beſiegen, ſchlagen.*
defence, die Verteidigung, —, -en.
defend verteidigen.
degree, der Grad, -(e)s, -e; (academic), die Würde, —, -n; der Titel, -s, —; doctor's —, der Doktorgrad.
delicious, köſtlich.
delighted, entzückt; be —, ſich freuen.
deliver, ab-liefern; überreichen, überbringen.*
demand, das Verlangen, -s.
demand, verlangen, fordern, erfor-
Denmark, das Dänemark, -s.
deny, leugnen.
depart, ab-reiſen (ſein), ab-fahren* (ſein), ſcheiden* (ſein), gehen* (ſein).
departure, die Abreiſe, —, -n; das Weggehen, -s.
depend, ab-hängen* (von); an-kommen* (auf).
dependent, abhängig.
deprive, berauben.
depth, die Tiefe, —, -n; he is out of his —, er hat den Boden verloren.*
describe, beſchreiben,* ſchildern.
desecration, die Entweihung, —, -en.
desert, verlaſſen.*
desirable, wünſchenswert.
desire, die Begierde, —, -n.
desire, wünſchen; —d, erwünſcht.
desirous, begierig (nach); be — of, gern mögen.
desk (of lecturer), der (*or* das) Katheder, -s, —.
despair, die Verzweiflung, —.
dessert, der Nachtiſch, -es.
detain, zurück-halten.*
determine, beſchließen,* ſich entſchließen.*
dethrone, entthronen.
develop, entwickeln.
development, die Entwick(e)lung, —, -en.
devil, der Teufel, -s, —.
devote, widmen.
devotion, die Andacht, —, -en.
devour, verſchlingen.*
diamond, der Diamant', -en, -en; (when cut), der Brillant' [briljant'], -en, -en.
dictation, das Diktat', -(e)s, -e; follow —, nach Diktat ſchreiben.*
didactic, didak'tiſch.
die, ſterben* (ſein).
diet (=imperial assembly), der Reichstag, -(e)s, -e.
differ, ſich unterſcheiden.*
difference, der Unterſchied, -(e)s, -e; it makes no —, es macht nichts aus.
different, verſchieden, ander, anders (*adv. and pred. adj.*).
difficult, ſchwer, ſchwierig.
dig, graben.*
diligent, fleißig, eifrig.
dining-car, der Speiſewagen, -s, —.
dinner, das Mittageſſen, -s, —; das Diner [dinē'], -s, -s; das Abendbrot, -(e)s, -e.
dip, tauchen.
director, der Direk'tor, -s, -to'ren.
direction, die Richtung, —, -en; die Leitung, —.

dirt, der Schmutz, –es.
disappear, verschwinden* (sein).
disappoint, enttäuschen.
disarm, entwaffnen.
disclose, entdecken; it is —d, es kommt heraus.
discipline, die Zucht, —; die Disciplin', —.
discount, der Rabatt,' –(e)s; der Diskon'to, –s, –s.
discuss, besprechen,* erörtern.
dish, das Gericht', –(e)s, –e; die Speise, —, –n.
disorder, die Unordnung, —.
dispense (with), verzichten auf (*acc.*).
disposal, die Verfügung, —, –en; it is at your —, es steht Ihnen zur Verfügung.
dissertation, die Dissertation', —, –en; die Arbeit, —, –en.
distance, die Entfernung, —, –en; die Ferne, —, –n.
distant, entfernt, weit; more — acquaintances, ferner Stehende.
distinguish, unterscheiden.*
distinguished, ausgezeichnet; (= prominent), vornehm.
distort, zerdrehen.
distribution, die Verteilung, —, –en; — of gifts, die Bescherung, —, –en.
district, die Gegend, —, –en.
disturb, stören.
diverse, verschieden.
do, tun*; — honor to, Ehre antun (*dat.*); how — you —? wie geht es Ihnen?
doctor, der Dok'tor, –s, –to'ren; (= physician), der Arzt, –es, ¨–e; ship's —, der Schiffsarzt.
dog, der Hund, –(e)s, –e.
dogma, das Dogma, –s, –men.
door, die Tür, —, –en.
double, doppelt.
doubtless, gewiß, zweifellos.
down, unten; hinab, hinunter, herunter.
dozen, das Dutzend, –(e)s, –e.
dragon, der Drache, –n, –n; —'s blood, das Drachenblut, –(e)s.
drain, leeren.
drama, das Drama, –s, Dramen.
draught, der Zug, –(e)s, ¨–e; of light — (of ships), von geringem Tiefgang.
draw, ziehen*; (= drag), schleppen.
dreadful, furchtbar.
dress, kleiden, sich an-ziehen.
drink, das Getränk, –(e)s, –e; der Trank, –(e)s, ¨–e.
drink, *v.*, trinken.*
drive (*tr.*), fahren*; (*intr.*) fahren* (sein).
driver, der Kutscher, –s, —.
drop (= let fall), fallen lassen.*
drown, — out (of noise), übertönen.
dry, *adj.*, trocken.
dry, *v.* trocknen.
duchess, die Herzogin, —, –nen.
duchy, das Herzogtum, –(e)s, ¨–er.
duck, die Ente, —, –n.
duel, das Duell', –(e)s, –e; (students' —), die Mensur', —, –en.
duet, das Duett', –(e)s, –e.
duke, der Herzog, –(e)s, ¨–e.
dull (of sound), dumpf.
during, während (*gen.*).
Dutch, holländisch.
dutiable, zollpflichtig.
duty, die Pflicht, —, –en.
dwarf, der Zwerg, –(e)s, –e.
dwell, wohnen.
dwelling, die Wohnung, —, –en.

E

each, jeder; — other, einander (*or reflexive pron.*); of one hour —, von je einer Stunde.
eager, eifrig; (= desirous) begierig; be — (to go), große Luſt haben (zu gehen).
ear, das Ohr, -(e)s, -en.
early, früh.
earnest, ernſt. [—, -en.
earth, die Erde, —, -n; die Welt,
ease, die Bequemlichkeit, —, -en; at our —, gemütlich.
east, der Oſten, -s.
east, *adj.*, öſtlich.
easy, bequem; (= not difficult), leicht; — conscience, ruhiges Gewiſſen.
eat, eſſen*; (of animals) freſſen.*
echo, wieder-hallen; — over, herüber-ſchallen* (*also weak*).
eight, acht.
eighteenth, achtzehnt.
either, einer; (= each) jeder; — ... or, entweder ... oder.
Elbe, die Elbe, —.
elderly, älter, ältlich.
elect, wählen.
elective (of studies), fakultativ.
electric, elek'triſch.
element, das Element', -(e)s, -e.
elevation, die Erhöhung, —, -en; (= height) die Höhe, —, -en.
eleven, elf; half past —, halb zwölf.
elf, der Elf, -en, -en.
elfin, elfenartig.
else, ſonſt.
elsewhere, anderswo.
emigrate, aus-wandern (ſein).
emperor, der Kaiſer, -s, —.
empire, das Reich, -(e)s, -e.
employ, an-ſtellen.
empty, *adj.*, leer.
empty, *v.* (of rivers), münden (in, *with acc.*).
enable, befähigen.
enclosed (in letters), beiliegend.
encounter, das Zuſammentreffen. -s, —.
encourage, ermutigen.
end, das Ende, -s, -n; der Schluß, -ſſes, ¨ſſe, in the —, am Ende.
end, endigen, auf-hören.
endure, ertragen*; (= last) beſtehen.*
enemy, der Feind, -(e)s, -e.
enforce, durch-führen, durch-ſetzen.
engage (= occupy), beſchäftigen; —d (in), begriffen* (in), beſchäftigt (mit).
engagement (= obligation), die Verpflichtung, —, -en; (= appointment) die Verabredung, —, -en.
engineer (of locomotive), der Lokomotiv'führer, -s, —; der Maſchiniſt', -en, -en.
England, das England, -s.
English, engliſch.
enjoy, genießen*; — one's self, ſich amüſie'ren (*or* unterhalten*).
enough, genug.
enter, ein-treten* (ſein) in: — the university, betreten*, ſich immatrikulie'ren laſſen.*
entertain, bewirten.
entire, ganz.
entitle, berechtigen.
entrance, der Eintritt, -(e)s.
entrust, an-vertrauen (*dat. of pers.*).
epic, das Epos, —, Epen.

epic, *adj.*, epiſch.
equal, gleich.
equip, aus=rüſten.
erect, errichten.
escape, die Flucht, —; das Entrinnen, –s; (possibility) of —, (Möglichkeit) zu entrinnen.
especially, beſonders.
etc., u. ſ. w. (und ſo weiter).
Europe, das Euro'pa, –s.
European, europä'iſch.
evangelical, evange'liſch.
even, *adj.*, eben; (= equal) gleich.
even, *adv.*., ſogar, ſelbſt; — if (*or* though), wenn auch.
evening, der Abend, –s, –e; — gathering (of students), die Kneipe, —, –n.
evening dress (swallow-tail coat), der Frack, –(e)s, –s (*or* ¨e).
event, das Ereignis, –ſſes, –ſſe.
ever, immer, je.
evergreen forest, der Nadelwald, –(e)s, ¨er.
everlasting, ewig.
every, jeder; —body (—one), jedermann, alles; —thing, alles; — where, überall.
exact, genau.
exactly, genau, gerade.
examination, die Prüfung, —, –en; das Exa'men, –s, –ina; — committee, der Prüfungsausſchuß, –ſſes, –ſchüſſe; — paper, die ſchriftliche Arbeit, —, –en.
examine, prüfen, unterſuchen; (= look at), betrachten, beſichtigen.
example, das Beiſpiel, –(e)s, –e; for —, z. B. (zum Beiſpiel).
excellent, vortrefflich, ausgezeichnet, glänzend.
except, außer (*dat.*).
exception, die Ausnahme, —, –n.
exchange, wechſeln; (lessons, etc.), aus=tauſchen.
exclaim, aus=rufen.*
excursion, der Ausflug, –(e)s, ¨e.
excuse, die Entſchuldigung, —, -en.
excuse, entſchuldigen; (= free from), befreien.
executive (of committee), geſchäftsführend.
exhibit, zeigen.
exist, beſtehen,* ſein, (es iſt, es gibt).
expect, erwarten.
expectancy, die Erwartung, —, –en.
expectant, erwartungsvoll.
expense, die Ausgabe, —, –n; die Koſten (*plur.*).
expensive, teuer, koſtſpielig.
experience ; learn by —, erfahren.*
experience, erfahren.*
experienced, *part. adj.*, erfahren.
explain, erklären.
express, aus=drücken.
express-train, der Schnellzug, –(e)s, ¨e.
expression, der Ausdruck, –(e)s, ¨e.
extensive, ausgedehnt, weit.
extreme, äußerſt, ſehr, außerordentlich; —ly old, uralt.
eye, das Auge, –s, –n.

F

fable, die Fabel, —, –n; (= tale), das Märchen, –s, —.
façade, die Faſſa'de, —, –n.
face, das Geſicht, –(e)s, –er.
facility, — for transportation, das Verkehrsmittel, –s, —.

fact, die Tatſache, – ·, –n.
faint, ſchwach, leiſe.
fair, die Meſſe, —, –n.
fair (of hair), blond; (= rather good), ziemlich (gut).
fairy-land, das Feenland, –(e)s, ¨er.
fairy-tale, das Märchen, –s, —.
faithful, treu, getreu.
faithless, treulos.
fall, fallen* (ſein); — asleep, einſchlafen* (ſein).
false, falſch.
fame, der Ruhm, –(e)s.
famed, berühmt; far —, weitberühmt.
familiar, vertraut.
family, die Fami'lie [je]; — life, das Familienleben, –s; (shared by guest), der Familienanſchluß, –ſſes.
famous, berühmt. [–luſſe.
famulus, der Famulus, —, –li *or*
far, fern, entfernt, weit; as — as, bis an (*acc.*).
fare, das Fahrgeld, –(e)s, –er; die Taxe, —, –n; bill of —, die Speiſekarte, —, –n.
fare, he —d well, es ging ihm gut; —well (= good-bye), lebe wohl.
fashion, verfertigen.
fast, ſchnell; (= firm), feſt.
fate, das Schickſal, –(e)s, –e.
father, der Vater, –s, ¨. [¨er.
fatherland, das Vaterland, –(e)s,
fatherly, väterlich.
fault, die Schuld, —, –en; (= mistake), der Fehler, –s, —.
faulty, fehlerhaft.
favor, die Gunſt, —.
favor, — us with a story, uns eine Geſchichte zum beſten geben.
favorite, der Liebling, –(e)s, –e.
favorite, *adj.*, beſonders beliebt; Lieblings=; — dish, das Lieblingsgericht, die Lieblingsſpeiſe.
fearful, furchtbar.
federal, — council, der Bundesrat, –(e)s; — government, die Bundesregie'rung, —, –en.
feel, fühlen; (of health), ſich fühlen.
feeling, das Gefühl, –(e)s, –e; — for nature, der Naturſinn, –(e)s; das Naturgefühl, –(e)s, –e.
fellow, der Kerl, –(e)s, –e *or* –s.
festival, das Feſt, –es, –e.
few, wenige; a —, einige, ein paar.
Fidulität, die Fidulität', —.
field, das Feld, –(e)s, –er; in the — (of), auf dem Gebiet (*w. gen.*).
fierce, wild, wütend.
fifteenth, fünfzehnt; the — (part), das Fünfzehntel, –s.
fiftieth, fünfzigſt.
fifty, fünfzig.
fight, fechten,* kämpfen.
figure, die Figur, —, –en; (math.), die Ziffer, —, –n.
final, letzt; — examination of Gymnasium, das Abiturien'tenexamen, –s.
finally, endlich.
find, finden,* vor=finden*; it is found, es findet ſich); — one's self, ſich (be)finden.
fine, ſchön, fein, prächtig.
finger, der Finger, –s, —.
finish, vollenden, beenden; —ed, *part. adj.*, fertig.
fir, die Tanne, —, –n; — forest, der Tannenwald, –(e)s, ¨er.
fire, das Feuer, –s, —.
fire-pond, der Feuerteich, –(e)s, –e.

first, erſt, zuerſt; at —, zuerſt; for the — time, zum erſten Mal(e).
fish, der Fiſch, –es, –e.
fishing-boat, das Fiſcherboot, –(e)s, –e (*or* böte).
five, fünf.
fix, beſtimmen.
flat, flach.
flee, fliehen* (ſein).
flight, die Flucht, —; (= flying *or* flock), der Flug, –(e)s, ¨e.
floor (= story), die Eta'ge [g = z *in azure*], —, –n; das Stockwerk, –(e)s, –e; der Stock, –(e)s, –(e).
flow, fließen* (ſein).
flower, die Blume, —, –n.
flunk, durch-fallen* (ſein).
fly, fliegen. [–en.
folding-door, die Flügeltür, —,
folk, das Volk, –(e)s, ¨er; die Leute (*only plur.*).
folksong, das Volkslied, –(e)s, –er.
follow, folgen (*dat.*, ſein); — out, befolgen, verfolgen; as —s, folgendermaßen; wie folgt.
food, die Nahrung, —; die Speiſe, —, –n.
foot, der Fuß, –es, ¨e.
for, *prep.*, für (*acc.*), aus, vor, zu (*dat.*); — some days, auf einige Tage.
for, *conj.*, denn.
forbid, verbieten* (*dat. of pers.*).
force, die Kraft, —, ¨e; die Macht, —, ¨e; (= violence), die Gewalt, —, –en; by —, mit Gewalt; — of nature, die Naturkraft.
force, erzwingen*.
fore, *adv.* vorn.
forefoot, der Vorderfuß, –es, ¨e.
foremost, erſt.
forepaw, die Vorderpfote, —, –n.
forest, der Wald, –(e)s, ¨er.
forfeit, das Pfand, –(e)s, ¨er.
forfeit, verwirken.
forge, ſchmieden.
forget, vergeſſen.*
fork, die Gabel, —, –n.
form, die Form, —, –en; die Geſtalt, —, –en.
form, bilden; it is —ed, es entſteht.
former, früher. [–s, –s.
fort, das Fort [*pron. as in French*],
fortress, die Feſtung, —, –en.
forty, vierzig; in the forties, in den Vierzigern.
fortune, das Glück, –(e)s.
forward, vorwärts, hervor.
foster, züchten.
found, gründen.
founder, der Gründer, –s, —.
fountain, die Quelle, —, –n.
fountain-pen, die Füllfeder, —, –n.
four, vier.
fourteen, vierzehn.
fourteenth, vierzehnt.
fourth, viert.
fowler (Henry the Fowler), Heinrich der Vogler.
fox, der Fuchs, –es, ¨e.
France, das Frankreich, –s.
Frankfort on the Main, Frankfurt am Main.
Franco-Prussian, deutſch-franzöſiſch.
fraternity, der Verein, –(e)s, –e; die Verbindung, —, –en.
fraternity-brother, der Vereinsbruder, –s, ¨.
fraternity-student (of societies wearing colors), der Couleur'ſtudent, –en, –en.
fraternity-system, das Verbindungsweſen, –s.

fray, der Kampf, –(e)s, ¨e.
free, *adj.*, frei.
free, *v.*, befreien.
freedom, die Freiheit, —, –en.
freeze, frieren.*
freight-car, der Güterwagen, –s, —.
freight-train, der Güterzug, –(e)s, ¨e.
French, französisch; (= language), das Französische (*adj. infl.*).
frequent, *v.*, besuchen.
fresh, frisch.
freshman (at university), der Fuchs, –es, ¨e.
friend, der Freund, –(e)s, –e.
friendly, freundlich.
friendship, die Freundschaft, —, –en.
frock-coat, der Gehrock, –(e)s, ¨e.
from, von, aus, vor (*dat.*).
front, die Vorderseite, —, –n.
front door, die Haustür, —, –en.
fulfil, erfüllen.
full, voll; at — length, der Länge nach.
fully, ganz, völlig.
fullness, die Fülle, —.
fun, der Spaß, –es, ¨e; der Scherz, –es, –e.
furnish, liefern.
furniture, die Möbel, *plur.*
further, weiter, ferner.
future, die Zukunft, —.

G

gable, der Giebel, –s, —.
gain, gewinnen.*
gallows, der Galgen, –s, —.
garden, der Garten, –s, ¨.
gate, das Tor, –(e)s, –e.
gay, heiter; (of colors), bunt.
general, der General', –(e)s, –e.
general, allgemein; (= usual), gewöhnlich.
gentle, sanft.
gentleman, der Herr, –n, –en; gentlemen (as form of address), meine Herren!
genuine, echt.
German, *adj.*, deutsch; *noun*, der Deutsche (*adj. infl.*); (= language), das Deutsche (*or* Deutsch); in —, auf deutsch.
Germany, das Deutschland, –s.
get '= receive), bekommen*; (= fetch), holen; (= become), werden*; — aboard, ein-steigen* (sein); — along together, sich vertragen*; — home, nach Hause kommen* (sein); — in order, in Ordnung bringen*; — out of (= leave) the train, aus-steigen* (sein); How is he —ting on? Wie geht es ihm? — through, durch-kommen* (sein); — up, auf-stehen.*
giant, der Riese, –n, –n.
Giant Mts., das Riesengebirge, –s.
gift, die Gabe, —, –n.
gigantic, riesenhaft, riesig.
gild, vergolden.
gilt, vergoldet.
girdle, der Gürtel, –s, —.
girl, das Mädchen, –s, –.
give, geben*, verleihen*, verschaffen; (of riddles, etc.), auf-geben*; — up (office), nieder-legen.
glad, froh; be —, sich freuen; I am —, Ich freue mich *or* es freut [mich.
gladly, gern.

glance, der Blick, –(e)s, –e.
glass, das Glas, –es, ¨er.
glorious, glorreich, herrlich.
go, gehen* (sein); (= travel), reisen (sein); (in a conveyance), fahren* (sein), — along, mitgehen*; — away, fort=gehen,* sich entfernen; — back, zurück=gehen*; — by, vorbei=fahren* (*or* gehen); — on, weiter=gehen*; — out, hinaus=gehen*; — there, dahin=gehen*; — through, durchgehen* durch=machen, absolvieren; — to sleep, ein=schlafen* (sein); — to work, sich an die Arbeit machen; — well with one, einem gut gehen*.
goal, das Ziel, –(e)s, –e.
goblet, der Becher, –s, —.
goblin, das Wichtelmännchen, –s, —; der Kobold, –(e)s, –e.
God, der Gott, –es, ¨er.
gold, das Gold, –(e)s.
golden, golden; (*in comp.*). Gold=.
good, gut; (= valid), gültig.
good-by, adieu! lebe wohl! auf Wiedersehen!
good-natured, gutmütig.
gorgeous, prächtig.
Gothic (= language), das Gotische; class in —, die Hörer im Gotischen.
govern, regie'ren, beherrschen.
government, die Regie'rung, —, –en.
gradual, allmäh'lich.
graduation, die Promotion', —, –en.
Grail, der Gral, –(e)s.
grammatical, gramma'tisch.
grand, groß, großartig.
grandmother, die Großmutter, —, ¨.
grant, gewähren, gönnen (*dat. of pers.*), billigen.
grass, das Gras, –es, ¨er.
grateful, dankbar.
grave, ernst.
gray, grau; — (old), greis.
great, groß.
greatly, sehr, bedeutend.
greedy, gierig.
Greek, griechisch; (= language), das Griechische (*adj. infl.*).
green, grün.
greet, begrüßen.
greeting, der Gruß, –es, ¨e.
grief, der Kummer, –s.
grind, mahlen*.
ground, der Boden, –s, ¨. [–sse.
ground-floor, das Erdgeschoß, –sses,
group, die Gruppe, —, –n.
grow (= become), werden* (sein).
guard (on train), der Schaffner, –s, —.
guard, beschützen; (= watch), bewachen.
guardian, der Hüter, –s, —.
guess, raten,* erraten*.
guest, der Gast, –(e)s, ¨e.
guide, der Führer, –s, —.
guide, führen, leiten.
gymnasium (= school), das Gymna'sium, –s, –ien; — student, der Gymnasiast', –en, –en; — training, die Gymnasial'erziehung, —.

H

half, die Hälfte, —, –n.
half, *adj.*, halb; — past three (o'clock), halb vier (Uhr).
half-dead, halbtot.
half-forgotten, halbvergessen.

hall, der Saal, -(e)s, Säle; die Halle, —, -n; (= vestibule), der Flur, -(e)s, -e.
hammer, der Hammer, -s, ¨.
hammer, hämmern, klopfen, schlagen.*
hand, die Hand, —, ¨e; on the other —, dagegen.
handkerchief, das Taschentuch, -(e)s, ¨er.
handsome, schön.
hang (*trans.*), hängen, hängen lassen*; (*intrans.*), hangen,* hängen.*
Hanover (*as adj.*), hannö'versch.
happen, geschehen* (sein).
happiness, das Glück, -(e)s.
happy, glücklich.
harbor, der Hafen, -s, ¨.
hard, *adj.*, hart; (= difficult), schwer, schwierig.
hard, *adv.*, tüchtig, ordentlich.
hardly, kaum.
hare, der Hase, -n, -n.
harvest, die Ernte, —, -n.
Harz Mountains, der Harz, -es.
haste, die Eile, —; in great —, in aller Eile.
hasten, eilen (sein *or* haben), sich beeilen.
hat, der Hut, -(e)s, ¨e; the free man's —, der freie Männerhut.
haul, — in, ein-ziehen.*
have, haben*; (= cause), lassen*; — to, müssen.*
he, er.
head, der Kopf, -es, ¨e; (= chief), das Haupt -es, ¨er; das Oberhaupt; the — of the table, der Ehrenplatz -es, ¨e; at the —, an der Spitze
headquarters (of student club), das Stammlokal', -(e)s, -e.
health, die Gesundheit, —, -en; to drink each other's —, einander (*or* sich) zu-trinken*; to the —, auf das Wohl.
heap, der Haufen, -s, —.
hear, hören.
heart, das Herz, -ens, -en; (of the mountain), der Schoß, -es, ¨e.
hearty, herzlich.
heath, die Heide, —, -n.
heavy, schwer.
heaven, der Himmel, -s, —; O good —s, O du lieber Himmel!
hedge, die Hecke, —, -n.
height, die Höhe, —, -n.
help, die Hilfe, —.
help, helfen* (*dat.*).
helpful, hilfreich.
helping, hilfreich.
helpless, hilflos.
Henry, Heinrich.
her (*poss. adj.*), ihr.
herd, die Herde, —, -n.
here, *adv.*, hier; —, porter! Sie da, Gepäckträger! the life —, das hiesige Leben.
hero, der Held, -en, -en.
heroic, heldenmäßig, heldenmütig; — legend, die Heldensage, —, -n.
heroine, die Heldin, —, -nen.
hesitation, das Zaudern (*or* Zögern), -s.
hew, hauen.*
hide, verbergen,* verstecken.
high, hoch.
highly, höchst, sehr.
highway, die Straße, —, -n; die Landstraße.
hill, der Hügel, -s, —; down (the) —, bergab'.

hind, hinter.
hind foot, der Hinterfuß, –es, ¨e.
hind paw, die Hinterpfote, —, –n.
his (*poss. adj.*), sein.
history, die Geſchichte, —, –n.
hither, hierher; — and thither, hin und her, hierhin und dorthin.
hoary, greis.
Hohenstaufen (monarch), der Hohenſtaufe, –n, –n.
hold, halten.*
hole, das Loch, –(e)s, ¨er.
holiday, der Feiertag, –(e)s, –e.
home (= house), das Haus, –es, ¨er; at —, zu Hauſe; go —, nach Hauſe gehen; from —, von Hauſe; (= town *or* country), die Heimat, —, –en.
honey, der Honig, –s.
honor, die Ehre, —; in our —, uns zu Ehren; do — to, Ehre antun* (*dat.*).
honor, beehren.
honorable, ehrlich.
hop, hüpfen (ſein); — about, herumhüpfen (ſein).
hope, die Hoffnung, —, –en.
hope, hoffen.
Horace, der Horaz', —.
horn, das Horn, –(e)s, ¨er.
horse, das Pferd, –(e)s, –e; das Roß, Roſſes, Roſſe.
horse-back, zu Pferde.
hospice, das Hoſpiz', –es, –e.
host, der Wirt, –(e)s, –e; (= great number), die Schar, —, –en; das Heer, –(e)s, –e.
hot, heiß, glühend.
hotel, das Hotel, –s, –s; der Gaſthof, –(e)s, ¨e.
hour, die Stunde, —, –n; chat an — or so, ein Stündchen plaudern; for —s, ſtundenlang.
house, das Haus, –es, ¨er.
house (*or* street) **door**, die Haustür, —, –en.
how, wie.
however, aber, jedoch, doch.
howl, heulen.
Hudson, — Bay, (die) Hudſon-Bai, Hudſonbai, *or* Hudſons Bai, —, –en.
huge, mächtig, ſehr groß.
human, menſchlich, weltlich; — being, der Menſch, –en, –en.
humanistic, humani'ſtiſch.
humble (= modest) beſcheiden; (= lowly) gering, arm.
Hun, der Hunne, –n, –n.
hundred, hundert. –(e)s, –e.
Hunnic, — king, der Hunnenkönig,
hunger, der Hunger, –s. [haben.
hungry, hungrig; be —, Hunger
hunt, die Jagd, —, –en.
hunter, der Jäger, –s, —.
hurl, werfen*, ſchleudern.
hurrah, hurra'! *or* hur'ra! hoch!
hurry, eilen (ſein *or* haben).
hurt, verletzen; (= pain), weh tun* (*dat.*).
husband, der Mann, –(e)s, ¨er; der Gemahl, –(e)s, –e; my —, mein Mann; your —, Ihr Herr Gemahl.
hyperbola, die Hyper'bel, —, –n.
hysterics, der Weinkrampf, –(e)s, ¨e.

I

I, ich.
idea, die Idee', —, –(e)n; der Begriff, –(e)s, –e.

ideal, das Ideal', –(e)s, –e.
ideal', ideal.
if, wenn; (= whether), ob; as —, als ob, als wenn.
illuminate, beleuchten.
imagine, sich (*dat.*) denken,* sich vorstellen.
imitate, nach=ahmen; es einem nach=machen.
immediate, unmittelbar.
immediately, gleich, sogleich.
immense, ungeheuer.
immeasurable, unermeßlich.
impartially, unparteiisch.
impenetrable, undurchdringlich.
imperial, kaiserlich, Reichs=; — land, das Reichsland, –(e)s.
importance, die Wichtigkeit, —; der Belang, –(e)s.
important, wichtig.
impress, imponie'ren (*dat.*).
impression, der Eindruck, –(e)s, ¨e.
imprison, ins Gefängnis werfen*; gefangen halten.*
in, *prep.*, in, an (*dat. or acc.*), zu (*dat.*); *adv.*, herein, hinein.
incident, das Ereignis, –sses, –sse; das Erlebnis, –sses, –sse; — of travel, das Reiseerlebnis.
inconvenience, belästigen; — one, einem ungelegen kommen.*
indebted, verpflichtet, verbunden; be — to one for something, jemand (*dat.*), etwas verdanken.
indeed, in der Tat; yes, —! ja wohl!
independent, unabhängig.
indescribable, unbeschreiblich.
individual, einzeln.
industry (business), die Industrie', —, –(e)n.
infant, *adj.*, jung, unmündig.
informal, offiziös', ungezwungen.
influence, der Einfluß, –es, ¨e.
inform, mit=teilen (*dat. of pers.*), benachrichtigen, unterrichten.
infuse, ein=flößen (*dat. of pers.*).
ingratitude, die Undankbarkeit, —.
inhabit, bewohnen.
inhabitant, der Einwohner, –s, —.
injure, beschädigen; (= wound), verletzen.
ink-spot, der Tintenfleck (*or* Klecks), –(e)s, –e.
inn, das Wirtshaus, –es, ¨er.
inn-keeper, der Wirt, –(e)s, –e.
inner, inner; — wall, die Binnenmauer, —, –n.
innocent, unschuldig.
innumerable, zahllos.
inquire, fragen, nach=fragen.
inquisitive, neugierig.
insignia, die (Ehren)zeichen (*plur.*); das (*or* die) Zeichen seiner Würde.
insist, bestehen* (upon = auf); they — that, sie bestehen darauf, daß.
inspiration, die Anregung, —, –en; die Begeisterung, —, –en.
inspired, begeistert.
inspiring, anregend, begeisternd.
inst., d. M. (dieses Monats).
instead, — of, (an)statt (*gen.*).
institution, die Anstalt, —, –en.
instruct, unterrichten, belehren.
instruction, der Unterricht, –(e)s.
instructive, lehrreich.
intend, beabsichtigen, bestimmen, wollen,* vor haben*: he —s to go, er hat vor zu gehen.
intention, die Absicht, —, –en; die Meinung, —, –en.
interest, das Interesse, –s, –n; die Teilnahme, —; das Entgegenkommen, –s.

interest, intereſſie'ren.
interesting, intereſſant'.
interrupt, unterbrechen.*
introduce, ein=führen, ein=flechten*; (= present), vor=ſtellen.
introduction, die Einleitung, —, –en; (= presentation), die Vorſtellung, —, –en; letter of —, der Empfehlungsbrief, –(e)s, –e.
invest, bekleiden.
investigation, die Forſchung, —, –en; die Unterſuchung, —, –en.
invisible, unſichtbar.
invincible, unüberwindlich.
invitation, die Einladung, —, –en.
invite, ein=laden.*
iron, das Eiſen, –s, —.
island, die Inſel, —, –n; das Eiland, –(e)s, –e *or* ¨er.
it, es (er, ſie); its, ſein (ihr); itself (*reflex.*), ſich; (*emphatic*), ſelbſt.

J

jail, das Gefängnis, –ſſes, –ſſe.
janitor, der Hausmann, –(e)s, ¨er.
January, der Januar, — *or* –s, –e.
join, bei=treten* (ſein) *dat.*), ſich anſchließen*; — in with, mit einſtimmen.
joke, der Witz, –es, –e; der Scherz, –es, –e; der Spaß, –es, ¨e.
joke, ſcherzen, ſpaßen.
jolly, fidel', luſtig.
journal, das Tageblatt, –(e)s, ¨er.
journey, die Reiſe, —, –n.
joust, das Turnier', –(e)s, –e.
joy, die Freude, —, –n.
joyful, freudig, fröhlich.
jubilant, jubelnd, frohlockend.
jubilation, der Jubel, –s.
judge, der Richter, –s, —.
judge, richten; (= consider), urteilen.
judgment, das Urteil, –(e)s, –e; das Gericht, –(e)s, –e.
juice, der Saft, –(e)s, ¨e.
July, der Juli, — *or* –s, — *or* –s.
jump, ſpringen* (ſein).
June, der Juni, — *or* –s, — *or* –s.
just, *adj.*, gerecht; *adv.*, gerade, eben, nur, einmal'.
justify, rechtfertigen.

K

keep, (= hold), halten*; (= guard), bewahren.
keg, das Faß, –ſſes, ¨ſſer.
kick, mit dem Fuße ſtoßen*, ausſchlagen.*
kill, töten; — time, die Zeit totſchlagen.*
kind, die Art, —, –en; die Sorte, —, –n; all —s of, allerlei, allerhand (*indecl.*); that — of, derartig; what — of, was für.
kind, freundlich, liebenswürdig.
kindness, die Liebenswürdigkeit, —; die Güte, —.
king, der König, –(e)s, –e. [–e.
kingdom, das (König)reich, –(e)s,
kiss, der Kuß, Kuſſes, Küſſe.
kiss, küſſen.
kitchen, die Küche, —, –n.
knife, das Meſſer, –s, —.
knight, der Ritter, –s, —; — of the Grail, der Gralritter.
knightly, ritterlich.
knit, ſtricken.
knock (at the door), (an die Tür) klopfen, pochen; there came a —,

es wurde geklopft, man (*or* es) klopfte.

know (facts), wiſſen*; (persons and things), kennen.*

known, bekannt; well- —, wohlbekannt; best —, bekannteſt.

knowledge, die Kenntnis, —, -ſſe; das Wiſſen, -s.

L

Labrador, das Labrador′, -s.

lack, fehlen (*dat.*).

laden, beladen.

lady, die Dame, —, -n; American —, die Amerika′nerin, —, -nen.

land, das Land, -(e)s, ¨er.

land, landen.

landing, die Landung, —, -en.

landing-place, der Landungsplatz, -(e)s, ¨e.

landlady, die Wirtin, —, -nen.

language, die Sprache, —, -n.

large, groß. [lich.

last, letzt, vorig; at —, zuletzt, endlich; **last**, dauern. [kommen, -s.

late, ſpät; coming —, das Zuſpät-

Latin, *adj.*, lateiniſch; (= Latin language), das Lateiniſche (*adj. inflect.*); das Latein, -s.

latter, the —, der letztere, dieſer.

laugh, lachen.

laurel, der Lorbeer, -(e)s, -en; — wreath, der Lorbeerkranz, -(e)s, ¨e.

law, das Geſetz, -es, -e; das Gebot, -(e)s, -e.

lay, legen; — before, vor-legen.

lazybones, der Faulpelz, -(e)s, -e.

lead, führen; — down, hinab-führen.

leader, der Führer, -s, —.

leadership, die Führung, —, -en; die Führerſchaft, —.

lead-pencil, der Bleiſtift, -(e)s, -e.

learn, lernen; (= hear), erfahren*; — by experience, erfahren.*

learned, gelehrt.

least, at —, wenigſtens.

leather, das Leder, -s.

leave, laſſen*; (= quit), verlaſſen*; (upon dying), hinterlaſſen*; (= entrust), überlaſſen*; — behind, zurück-laſſen*; — the train, aus-ſteigen* (ſein); take one's —, ſich verabſchieden.

lecture, die Vorleſung, —, -en; das Kolleg′, -s, -ien; der Vortrag, -(e)s, ¨e; — course, die Vorleſung, —, -en.

lecture-room, der Hörſaal, -(e)s, -ſäle.

left, *adj.*, link; on the —, links; — over, übrig.

legend, die Sage, —, -n.

lend, leihen*; — a helping hand, hilfreiche Hand darbieten* (*or* leiſten).

length, die Länge, —, -n; at full —, der Länge nach.

less, weniger.

lesson, die Stunde, —, -n; die Aufgabe, —, -n. [gen.

let, laſſen*; — know, benachrichti-

letter, der Buchſtabe, -n(s), -n; der Brief, -(e)s, -e; — of introduction, der Empfehlungsbrief.

liberty, die Freiheit, —, -en.

library, die Bibliothek′, —, -en.

lid, der Deckel, -s, —.

lie, liegen*; — down, ſich niederlegen, ſich hin-legen; — in, beruhen auf.

lieutenant, der Leutnant, –s, –s.
life, das Leben, –s, —.
lift, heben*; — up, auf=heben.*
light, das Licht, –(e)s, –er.
light (= kindle), an=zünden.
lighting, die Beleuchtung, —, –en.
lightship, das Leuchtſchiff, –(es), –e.
like, *adj.*, gleich (*dat.*); *adv.*, wie; look — forts, wie Forts aus=ſehen.*
like, mögen*, gern haben; — to hear, gern hören; — more and more, immer lieber haben.
linden, die Linde, —, –n; — **-tree**, der Lindenbaum, –(e)s, ¨e.
linen, die Leinwand, —.
lion, der Löwe, –n, –n.
lip, die Lippe, —, –n.
list, die Liſte, —, –n; — price, der Verlagspreis, –es, –e, der Katalogpreis.
listen, zu=hören, lauſchen.
lists, die Schranken (*plur.*).
literary, literariſch.
literature, die Literatur', —, –en.
little (= small), klein; (of quantity), wenig.
live, leben; (= dwell), wohnen.
location, die Lage, —, –n.
lock, (of hair), die Locke, —, –n.
lock, *v.*, ver= (*or* zu=) ſchließen.*
locomotive, die Lokomoti've, —, –n.
lofty, erhaben.
long, *adj.*, lang; *adv.*, lange; no —er, nicht mehr; be —, lange dauern; a — time, lange.
look, ſehen,* ſchauen; (= appear), aus=ſehen*; — at (on), an=ſehen*; (= examine), ſich (*dat.*) an=ſehen,* betrachten; — for, ſuchen, auf=ſuchen, ſuchen nach; — over (towards), hinüber=ſehen* nach; — up, aus=ſuchen; (in a book), nach=ſchlagen*; — upon, ſchauen; take a — at, ſich (*dat.*) an=ſehen.*
loose, loſe, locker.
lose, verlieren.*
loss, der Verluſt, –es, –e; be never at a — for, immer wiſſen.*
loud, laut.
love, die Liebe, —; — of splendor, die Prachtliebe.
love, lieben.
low, niedrig, tief; —er, niedriger; Unter=.
Low-German, plattdeutſch.
luggage, das Gepäck, –(e)s.
lunch, das (zweite) Frühſtück, –(e)s, –e; der Imbiß, –ſſes, –iſſe.
lying, das Lügen, –s.

M

mad, raſend, wütend.
Magdeburg (*as adj.*), Magdeburger (*uninfl.*).
magnificent, großartig, herrlich.
maid (= servant), das Dienſtmädchen, –s, —.
mail, die Poſt, —; by return —, umgehend.
Main, der Main, –(e)s.
main, — street, die Hauptſtraße, —, –n; by — force, mit (aller) Gewalt.
mainly, hauptſächlich.
majestic, majeſtä'tiſch.
majority, die Mehrzahl, —.
make, machen; (= cause), laſſen*; — the best of it (= put up with) fürlieb' nehmen*; — peace, Frieden machen (*or* ſchließen*); — it

out (= find one's way), ſich zurecht finden*; not know what to — of something, ſich etwas gar nicht erklären können.

man, der Mann, –(e)s, ¨er; (= human being), der Menſch, –en, –en; young men, junge Leute.

mankind, das Menſchengeſchlecht, –(e)s; die Menſchen (*plur.*).

manner, die Art, —, –en; die Weiſe, —, –n; in this —, auf dieſe Weiſe.

manikin, das Männchen, –s, —; der Zwerg, –(e)s, –e.

manure, der Miſt, –(e)s.

many, viele; — a, manch; — kinds of, vielerlei (*indecl.*).

map, die Karte, —, –n; die Wandkarte.

march, der Marſch, –es, ¨e.

march, marſchie'ren, —ing song, das Marſchlied, –(e)s, –er.

mare, die Stute (*or* Mähre), —, –n.

marine, merchant —, die Handelsflotte, —, –n.

M. = **mark**, M. = die Mark, —, —.

market, der Markt, –(e)s, ¨e.

market-place, der Marktplatz, –es, ¨e.

marsh, der Sumpf, –(e)s, ¨e.

mass, die Maſſe, —, –n.

mast, der Maſt, –(e)s, –en.

master, der Herr, –n, –en; der Meiſter, –s, —; — of arms, der Waffenmeiſter.

masterpiece, das Meiſterſtück, –(e)s, –e; intended for a —, zum Meiſterſtück beſtimmt.

match, be more than a — for one, einem überlegen ſein.*

material, der Stoff, –(e)s, –e; — for teaching, der Lehrſtoff.

material, *adj.*, weſentlich, bedeutend.

mathematics, die Mathematik' [ɔr ma'tik], —.

matter, (= affair), die Sache, —, –n; as a — of course, ſelbſtverſtänd'lich; no — where, gleichviel wo; what is the —? was gibt es? was iſt los?

mature, reif.

May, der Mai, — *or* –(e)s, –(e)n.

may, mögen*; können*; (= be permitted), dürfen.*

Mayence, Mainz.

mayor, der Bürgermeiſter, –s, —.

meadow, die Wieſe, —, –n.

meal, das Mahl, –(e)s, –e *and* ¨er; die Mahlzeit, —, –en.

mean, (= intend), beabſichtigen.

meaning, die Bedeutung, —, –en.

means, das Mittel, –s, —; by — of, durch (*acc.*).

meantime (while), inzwiſchen, unterdeſſen; in the —, = meantime.

meat, das Fleiſch, –es; cold (sliced) —, der kalte Aufſchnitt, –(e)s.

meet, begegnen (*dat.*), (ſein); treffen.*

meeting, (= assembly), die Verſammlung (*or* Sitzung), —, –en; (evening — of students) die Kneipe, —, –n.

member, das Mitglied, –(e)s, –er.

mental, geiſtig.

mention, erwähnen.

merchant, — marine, die Handelsflotte, —, –n.

mercy, die Gnade, —.

merely, nur, bloß.

message, die Botſchaft, —, –en.

messenger, der Bote, –n, –n.

metal, *adj.*, metal'len.
meter, das or der Meter, –s, —.
midnight, die Mitternacht, —, ¨e.
middle, die Mitte, —; — ages, das Mittelalter, –s; in the — of, mitten in.
mien, die Miene, —, –n.
might, die Macht, —, ¨e.
mighty, mächtig.
mild, mild.
military, militärisch, Kriegs-, — power, die Kriegsmacht, —, ¨e.
mill, die Mühle, —, –n.
miller, der Müller, –s, —.
mill-stone, der Mühlstein, –(e)s, –e.
million, die Million', —, –en.
mind, der Geist, –(e)s, –er.
mine, mein.
mingle, mischen.
minor, kleiner, geringer.
minster, das Münster, –s, —.
minstrel, der Sänger, –s, —.
minute, die Minu'te, —, –n.
misdeed, die Missetat, —, –en; die Übeltat, —, –en.
misfortune, das Unglück, –(e)s; das Mißgeschick, –(e)s, –e.
misinterpret, falschdeuten, zerdeuteln.
miss, das Fräulein, –s, —; Miss W., Fräulein W.
miss, versäumen, entbehren.
missing, be —, fehlen.
mister (**Mr.**), (der) Herr, –n, –en.
mistress, die Herrin, —, –nen; Mrs., (die) Frau, —, –en; — of the house, die Hausfrau.
misuse, mißbrauchen.
mix, mischen, mengen.
moat, der Graben, –s, —.
model, das Muster, –s, —.
moderate, mäßig.
modern, modern, neu; — Philology Club (Fraternity), der Neuphilologische Verein.
modest, bescheiden.
moment, der Augenblick, –(e)s, –e.
monastery, das Kloster, –s, ¨.
Monday, der Montag, –(e)s, –e.
money, das Geld, –(e)s, –er.
monotonous, eintönig.
month, der Monat, –(e)s, –e.
monument, das Denkmal, –(e)s, ¨er *or* –e.
more, mehr; no —, nicht —; once —, noch einmal; three — years, drei weitere Jahre, noch drei Jahre.
moreover, außerdem, überdies.
morning, der Morgen, –s, —; der Vormittag, –(e)s, –e.
morrow, der Morgen, –s, —; on the —, am folgenden Morgen (*or* Tage).
most, meist.
mostly, meistens.
mother, die Mutter, —, ¨.
motion, die Bewegung, —, –en.
mount (*trans.*), besteigen*; (*intrans.*), hinauf-steigen * (sein).
mountain, der Berg, –(e)s, –e; —s, (= mountain range or system), das Gebirge, –s, —; die Gebirgskette, —, –n; — depth, die Bergestiefe, —, –n.
mountainous, bergig, gebirgig.
mouth, der Mund, –(e)s, ¨er *or* –e; (of animal), das Maul, –(e)s, ¨er.
much, *pron. adj.*, viel; *adv.*, viel, (of degree), sehr.
Munich, München.
mural, Wand-; — painting, das Wandgemälde, –s, —.

murmur, das Gemurmel, –s.
muse, die Muſe, —, –n; city of the —s, die Muſenſtadt, —.
museum, das Muſe'um, –s, Muſeen.
music, die Muſik', —.
must, müſſen.*
my, mein.

N

nail, der Nagel, –s, ¨.
naked, nackt, bloß.
name, der Name, –ns, –n; his — is, er heißt.*
name, nennen*; —**d**, genannt, Namens.
nap, das Schläfchen, –s, —; after-dinner —, das Nachmittagsſchläfchen.
narrow, eng, ſchmal; (of intellect), beſchränkt.
nation, das Volk, –(e)s, ¨er; die Nation, —, –en.
national, national'; — poem, das Nationalgedicht, –(e)s, –e.
native, — city, die Vater- (*or* Heimat-) ſtadt, —, ¨e.
natural, — science, die Naturwiſſenſchaft, —, –en.
natural, natürlich.
nature, die Natur', —, –en; feeling for —, der Naturſinn, –(e)s, –e, das Naturgefühl, –(e)s, –e.
navigable, ſchiffbar.
near, *adj.*, nah(e); *adv.*, nah(e), in **nearly**, faſt. [der Nähe (von).
neat, nett, ſauber.
necessary, nötig, notwendig.
necessity, die Not, —, ¨e.
Neckar, der Neckar, –s.
neé, geb. = geborene.
need, die Not, —, ¨e.
need, brauchen.
needed, nötig, notwendig.
neighbor, der Nachbar, –s, or –n, –n; — at table, der Tiſchnachbar.
neighborhood, die Nachbarſchaft, —; die Nähe, —.
neighboring, benachbart, nah.
neither, *pron.*, keiner; *conj.*, — . . . nor, weder . . . noch.
Netherlands, die Niederlande (*plur.*): das Holland, –s.
never, nie, niemals; — before, nie vorher.
nevertheless, doch, trotzdem, nichtsdeſtoweniger.
new, neu, friſch.
news, die Nachricht, —, –en.
newspaper, die Zeitung, —, –en.
New Year, das Neujahr, –(e)s, –e; das neue Jahr; der Jahreswechſel, –s, —.
next, nächſt.
nice, nett.
nick, in the — of time, gerade zur rechten Zeit.
night, die Nacht, —, ¨e; at —, nachts, des Nachts.
nineteenth, neunzehnt.
ninety, neunzig.
No. (= numero), No., die Nummer, —, –n; No. 14 Ross Street, Roßſtraße vierzehn.
no, *pron.*, kein; *adv.*, nein; —body (one), keiner, niemand; —longer, nicht mehr.
noise, der Lärm, –(e)s.
noiseless, geräuſchlos.
noon, der Mittag, –(e)s, –e.
noose, die Schlinge, —, –n; der Fallſtrick, –(e)s, –e.
nor, noch.

Norway, das Norwegen, –s.
North, der Norden, –s; — Sea, die Nordsee, —.
northerly (northern), nördlich.
northeast, der Nordosten, –s.
northwest, der Nordwesten, –s.
northwest, *adj.*, nordwestlich.
not, nicht; — any (a), kein; — at all, gar nicht. [nach=schreiben.*
note, die Notiz', —, –en; take —s,
noted, berühmt, bekannt.
nothing, nichts.
notice, die Anzeige, —, –n.
notice, merken, bemerken.
nourishment, die Nahrung, —.
November, der November, –(s), —.
now, jetzt, nun; now . . . now, bald . . . bald.
nowhere, nirgends.
number, die Anzahl, —.
numerous, zahlreich.

O

oak, die Eiche, —, –n.
oak(en), eichen.
oath, der Eid, –(e)s, –e.
obey, gehorchen (*dat.*).
object, der Gegenstand, –(e)s, ¨e; — of study, das Studienobjekt', –(e)s, –e; der Lehrgegenstand.
oblige, verbinden*; be —d, müssen.*
obtain, bekommen,* erlangen.
occasion, die Gelegenheit, —, –en.
occasional, gelegentlich.
occupy, ein=nehmen,* besetzen; (= busy), beschäftigen.
occur, vor=kommen.*
ocean, der Ozean', –(e)s, –e; — trip, die Seereise, —, –n.
Oder, die Oder, —.
odor, der Geruch, –(e)s, ¨e.
Odyssey, die Odyssee', —.
of, von, aus (*dat.*), über (*dat. or acc.*); *often rendered by gen. case.*
offence (= wrong), das Vergehen, –s, —.
offer, an=bieten.*
offering, die Spende, —, –n; das Opfer, –s, —.
office, das Amt, –(e)s, ¨er.
officer, der Beamte (*adj. infl.*), der Offizier –(e)s, –e; (of Verein) der Chargier'te [ch = *sh*, g = *z in azure*], –n, –n.
official, offiziell'.
often, oft, häufig.
old, alt.
on, *prep.*, an, auf, über (*dat. or acc.*); *adv.*, fort, weiter, vorwärts.
once, einmal; — upon a time, einmal, einst; at —, sogleich, (= suddenly), auf einmal.
one, ein; not —, kein einziger, *pron.*, einer; (*indef. pron.*), man; — another, einander; — after another, nach und nach; this —, dieser.
only, *adj.*, einzig; *adv.*, nur.
open, offen.
open, auf=machen, öffnen, sich öffnen.
opening, die Öffnung, —, –en; die Spalte, —, –n.
opera, die Oper, —, –n.
opponent, der Gegner, –s, —.
oppose, be —d to something, gegen etwas sein.
opposite, gegenüberliegend (*or* stehend); — to, gegenüber (*dat.*).
opportunity, die Gelegenheit, —, –en.
or, oder.
oral, mündlich.

ordeal, das Gottesurteil, –(e)s, –e; das Gericht, –(e)s, –e; die Prüfung, —, –en.
order, die Ordnung, —, –en; (= commission), die Bestellung, —, –en; der Auftrag, –(e)s, ¨e; in — to, um . . . zu.
order, bestellen.
ordinary, gewöhnlich.
organ, die Orgel, —, –n.
origin, der Ursprung, –(e)s, ¨e; die Herkunft, —.
original, ursprünglich, originell'; (= one's own work), eigen.
ornament, der Schmuck, –(e)s, –e; gold —s, der Goldschmuck.
ornament, schmücken.
other, ander; each —, einander, *or reflex. pron.*
otherwise, anders; (= else), sonst.
our, unser.
out, *adv.*, hinaus, heraus; — of, *prep.*, aus (*dat.*), von (*dat.*); — of the way, abgelegen.
outer, äußer; — gate, das Außentor, –(e)s, –e.
output, — (of manufactures), die Produktion', —, –en.
outside, *adv.*, außen, draußen; — of, außerhalb (*gen.*).
ovation, die Ovation', —, –en.
over, *prep.*, über (*dat. and acc.*), *adv.*, drüben; (= past), vorbei, vorüber, aus; — there, drüben.
overcast, bedeckt; become —, sich bedecken.
overcome, überwinden.*
overtake, ein-holen.
overthrow (= conquer), besiegen; be —n, unterliegen* (sein).
overwhelm, überwältigen.
owe (= be indebted for), verdanken; to — us a visit, uns einen Besuch schuldig sein. [Schuld.
own, eigen; fault of his —, eigene
owner, der Eigentümer, –s, —; der Besitzer, –s, —.
oyster, die Auster, —, –n.

P

pack, ein-packen.
package, das Paket', –(e)s, –e.
pail, der Eimer, –s, —.
pain (= trouble), die Mühe, —, –n; take —s, sich bemühen.
paint, malen, bemalen.
painting, das Gemälde, –s, —.
pair, das Paar, –(e)s, –e.
palace, der Palast', –es, Paläste.
pale, blaß, bleich.
paper, das Papier', –(e)s, –e; (= newspaper), die Zeitung, —, –en.
parabola, die Para'bel, —, –n.
parallel (of latitude), der Breitengrad –(e)s, –e; der Parallel'kreis, –es, –e.
pardon, verzeihen* (*dat.*).
parents, die Eltern (*plur.*).
park, der Park, –(e)s, –e *or* –s; die Anlagen (*plur.*).
part, der Teil, –es, –e; (= rôle), die Rolle, —, –n; — of the city, das Stadtviertel, –s, —; der Stadtteil.
part, — with, sich trennen (von).
particular, besonder.
pass, vorbei-gehen* (sein), passie'ren (sein); (of examination) bestehen*; (of time), vergehen* (sein); —(the time), (die Zeit) verbringen,* zubringen*: — through, durchmachen.

passage, die Überfahrt, —, -en.
passenger, der Paſſagier' [g = *z in azure*], -(e)s, -e.
passenger-car, der Perſo'nenwagen, -s, —.
past, die Vergangenheit, —.
past, *prep.*, an . . . vorbei (*dat.*); *adv.*, vorbei, vorüber; at quarter —, um viertel nach.
pause, die Pauſe, —, -n.
pave, pflaſtern.
pavement, das Pflaſter, -s, —.
paw, die Pfote, —, -n.
pay, bezahlen.
peace, der Friede, -ns; der Frieden, -s.
peaceful, friedlich, ruhig.
peak, die Spitze, —, -n.
peaked-cap, die Zipfelmütze, —, -n.
peasant, der Bauer, -s *or* -n, -n.
peculiar, ſeltſam, ſonderbar, eigentümlich, eigenartig.
peculiarity, die Eigentümlichkeit, —, -en; (= oddity), die Sonderbarkeit, —, -en.
pedagog, der Pädago'g(e), -en, -en; der Erzieher, -s, —.
peep, gucken.
pencil (= lead-pencil), der Bleiſtift, -(e)s, -e.
people (= nation), das Volk, -(e)s, ¨er; (= persons), die Leute (*plur.*).
people, bevölkern, bewohnen, beleben.
per cent, das Prozent', -(e)s, -e; at five —, zu fünf Prozent.
perceive, ein-ſehen.*
percentage, der Prozentſatz, -es, ¨e.
perfect, perfekt', vollkommen.
perfect, ſich vervollkommnen.
performance, die Vorſtellung, —, -en; die Aufführung, —, -en.
perhaps, vielleicht.
period, die Perio'de, —, -n; die Zeit, —, -en.
permanent, bleibend, dauernd.
permission, die Erlaubnis, —.
permit, erlauben, geſtatten (*dat. of pers.*); be —ed, dürfen.*
perplexity, die Verlegenheit, —.
person, die Perſon', —, -en.
personal, perſön'lich.
perspire, ſchwitzen.
persuade, überreden.
pervade, durchdringen,* ein-nehmen.*
petty, kleinlich, gering.
pfennig (**pfg.**), der Pfennig, -(e)s, -(e); sixty —s worth, für ſechzig Pfennig.
philology, die Philologie' [g *hard*], —.
philosopher, der Philoſoph', -en, -en.
philosophy, die Philoſophie', —, -(e)n.
phonetics, die Phone'tik, — (*sing.*).
piano, das Klavier', -(e)s, -e.
pick, — out, aus-ſuchen, aus-wählen.
picture, das Bild, -(e)s, -er; covered with —s, bemalt.
picturesque, maleriſch.
pig, das Schwein, -(e)s, -e.
pigeon, die Taube, —, -n.
pig-pen, der Schweineſtall, -(e)s, ¨e.
pilgrimage, die Wallfahrt, —, -en.
pillar, der Pfeiler, -s, —.
pillow, das Kopfkiſſen, -s, —.
pious, fromm.

pirate, der Seeräuber, –s, —.
place, der Platz, –es, ¨e; der Ort, –(e)s, –e *and* ¨er; (= position), die Stelle, —, –n; die Stellung, —, –en; in — of, an Stelle; (*with gen.*). little — (of town), das Neſt, –es, –er; take the — of, vertreten.*
place, tun,* ſtellen, legen.
plan, der Plan, –(e)s, ¨e.
plant, die Pflanze, —, –n.
plate, der Teller, –s, —. [–(e)s, –e.
platform (of station), der Bahnſteig,
play, das Spiel, –(e)s, –e; (= drama), das Schauſpiel, –(e)s, –e.
play, ſpielen.
playing (= acting), das Spiel, –(e)s.
pleasant, angenehm, freundlich; — appearing, nett ausſehend.
please, freuen (*acc.*), gefallen* (*dat.*); (= I beg of you), bitte! be —d, ſich freuen; well —d, zufrieden.
pleasure, das Vergnügen, –s, —; die Freude, —, –n; —s of youth, die Jugendfreuden; give —, Vergnügen (*or* Freude) machen.
plenty, die Fülle, —; die Menge, —; — of, genug.
pluck, pflücken.
plume, —d cap, der Federhut, –(e)s, ¨e.
ply, fahren* (ſein); regelmäßig verkehren.
poem, das Gedicht, –(e)s, –e.
poet, der Dichter, –s, —.
point, on the — of telling, im Begriff zu erzählen.
policeman, der Poliziſt', –en, –en; der Schutzmann, –(e)s, –leute *or* ¨er.
polite, höflich. [tional=.
political, poli'tiſch, Staats=, Na=
politics, die Politik', —, (*sing.*).
pond, der Teich, –(e)s, –e.
pool, die Pfütze, —, –n.
poor, arm.
popular, volkstümlich, Volks=; (= favorite), beliebt; — superstition, der Volksaberglaube, –ns.
port, der Hafen, –s, ¨; (= window), das Fenſter, –s, —.
porter, der Gepäckträger, –s, —.
portier, der Portier [*French pron.*], –s, –s.
portion, der Teil, –(e)s, –e.
position, die Stellung, —, –en.
possess, beſitzen.*
possibility, die Möglichkeit, —, –en.
possible, möglich; make —, ermöglichen; not —, unmöglich.
post, der Poſten, –s, —.
post(al) card, die Poſtkarte, —, –n.
post-office, das Poſtamt, –(e)s, ¨er; die Poſt, —, –en.
poste restante, poſtlagernd.
potato, die Kartoffel, —, –n.
potion, sleeping —, der Schlaftrank, –(e)s, ¨e.
power, die Kraft, —, ¨e; die Macht, —, ¨e; military —, die Kriegsmacht; world —, die Weltmacht.
powerless, kraftlos, machtlos.
practice, (= exercise), die Übung, —, –en.
praise, loben.
prayer, das Gebet, –(e)s, –e; (= request), die Bitte, —, –n; say one's —s, beten.
preceding, vorhergehend.
precious, koſtbar. [–e.
precious-stone, der Edelſtein, –(e)s,

preëmpt, in Beſchlag nehmen.*
prefer, vor=ziehen.*
prejudice, das Vorurteil, –(e)s, –e.
preoccupied, in Gedanken verſunken, zerſtreut.
preparatory, vorbereitend, Vorbereitungs=.
prepare, bereiten, vor=bereiten.
presence, die Gegenwart, —.
present, die Gegenwart, —; (= gift), das Geſchenk, –(e)s, –e; for the —, vorläufig; at —, vorläufig, augenblicklich, gegenwärtig; the — day, der heutige Tag; to be — at, bei=wohnen (*dat.*).
present, dar=ſtellen, dar=bieten*; — oneself (for examinations, etc.), ſich melden (*or* ſtellen); (= give), ſchenken; — (a letter), überreichen, übergeben.*
presentation, die Darſtellung, —, –en; die Vorſtellung, —, –en.
preserve, behalten,* erhalten*; (= save), retten.
president, der Vorſitzende (*adj. infl.*).
press, — through, ſich durch=drängen.
pretend, vor=geben*; he —ed to be sleeping, er tat, als ob er ſchliefe.
pretty, *adj.*, hübſch; *adv.*, ziemlich.
prevail, ſiegen.
prevent, verhindern; (einem etwas) wehren.
previous, vorig, vorhergehend.
price, der Preis, –es, –e.
pride, der Stolz, –es.
prima, (upper class in gymnasium), die Prima, —, Primen.
primitive, primitiv'.
prince, —s' vault, die Fürſtengruft, —, ¨e.
principal, — thing, die Hauptſache, —, –n.
principle, on —, prinzipiell', grundſätzlich.
prisoner, der Gefangene (*adj. infl.*).
private, Privat=.
probable, wahrſcheinlich.
probably, wahrſcheinlich, wohl.
problem, die Aufgabe, —, –n; das Problem', –(e)s, –e.
procession, der Zug, –(e)s, ¨e.
procure, ſich (*dat.*), verſchaffen.
profession, (= vocation), der Beruf, –(e)s, –e.
professor, der Profeſ'ſor, –s, –o'ren.
program, das Programm', –(e)s, –e; The Day's —, (Der) Verlauf des Tages.
progress, der Fortſchritt, –(e)s, –e.
project, vor=ſpringen* (ſein); her=vor=ragen.
promenade-deck, das Promena'=dendeck, –(e)s, –e.
prominent, hervorragend.
promise, verſprechen.* (*dat.*).
pronounce, aus=ſprechen*; — judgment, das Urteil ſprechen* (*or* fällen).
pronunciation, die Ausſprache, —, [–n.
proof, der Beweis, –es, –e; das Zeugnis, –ſſes, –ſſe.
propose, vor=ſchlagen.*
prosaic, proſaiſch.
Pros(i)t, (= your health!), Proſ(i)t!
prosperous, glücklich, erfolgreich.
protect, ſchützen.
proud, ſtolz; — of, ſtolz auf (*acc.*).
prove, beweiſen*; — to be, ſich erweiſen* als.

proverb, das Sprichwort, –(e)s, ¨er.
provide, —d with, versehen mit.
provision, das Lebensmittel, –s, —.
Prussia, das Preußen, –s.
public, öffentlich.
pull, ziehen,* heraus=ziehen*; — away, an=ziehen*; — in, ein=ziehen*; — out (of train), ab=fahren* (sein).
punch, der Punsch, –es, –e.
punch-bowl, die (Punsch)bowle, —, –n.
pupil, der Schüler, –s, —; die Schülerin, —, –nen.
purchase, der Einkauf, –(e)s, ¨e; make —s (do shopping), Einkäufe machen.
purchase, kaufen.
purchaser, der Käufer, –s, —.
pure, rein.
purpose, die Absicht, —, –en; der Zweck, –(e)s, –e.
purse, der Geldbeutel, –s, —.
put, tun,* legen; (a question), stellen; — on (clothes), an=ziehen*; (hat), auf=setzen; — up at, ein=kehren (sein) in.

Q

quaint, altertümlich; (= peculiar), eigentümlich.
quality, die Eigenschaft, —, –en; superior —, der Vorzug, –(e)s, ¨e.
quarter, das Viertel, –s, —; the four —s of the world, die vier Himmelsgegenden.
quarters, das Quartier', –(e)s, –e.
quay, der Kai, –s, –s.
queen, die Königin, —, –nen.
question, die Frage, —, –n.
question, befragen, aus=fragen.
quick, schnell.
quiet, ruhig.
quite, ganz, durchaus; (= somewhat), ziemlich.

R

rack, das Gestell, –(e)s, –e; (in car), das Netz, –es, –e.
rail, by —, mit der Eisenbahn.
railroad (railway), die Eisenbahn, —, –en. [¨er.
railway-guide, das Kursbuch, –(e)s,
rain, regnen.
range (of mountains), die Gebirgskette, —, –n; das Gebirge, –s, —.
rapidity, die Schnelligkeit, —.
rare, selten.
rate, der Preis, –es, –e; at any —, jedenfalls.
rather, lieber, eher.
raven, der Rabe, –n, –n.
raze, herunter=reißen,* schleifen.
reach, gelangen (zu).
read, lesen.*
reading, das Lesen, –s; die Lektü're, —, –n; easy —, leichte Lektüre.
ready, (= finished), fertig; (= prepared), bereit; get —, sich fertig machen.
real, wirklich.
Realgymnasium, das Real'gymnasium, –s, –ien. [lich.
really, wirklich, in der Tat, eigent=
reappear, wieder=erscheinen* (sein).
reason, (= cause), die Ursache, —, –n; der Grund, –(e)s, ¨e.
receive, empfangen*; bekommen,* erhalten.*
recently, neulich, kürzlich.
reception, der Empfang, –(e)s, ¨e.

reception-room, das Empfangszimmer, –s, —.
recess, die Pauſe, —, –n.
recognize, erkennen,*
recover, ſich erholen.
redoubted, gefürchtet.
reduced, ermäßigt.
reënter, wieder ein=ſteigen* (ſein), in (*with acc.*), wieder ein=treten* (ſein), in (*with acc.*).
refer, überlaſſen.*
reform, die Beſſerung, —, –en.
reform, ſich beſſern.
reformation, die Reformation′, —.
refrain, der Refrain′ [*pron. as in French*], –s, –s.
refuge, die Zuflucht, —; take —, ſich flüchten, ſeine Zuflucht nehmen.
refuse, verweigern, ſich weigern.
regard, in — to, betreffs *or* in betreff (*gen.*), in Bezug auf (*acc.*); kindest —s, herzlichſte Grüße.
regret, bedauern.
regular, (= genuine), echt, richtig.
regulation, die Vorſchrift, —, –en; die Regel, —, –n.
Reichstag, der Reichstag, –(e)s, –e.
rejoice, ſich freuen.
relate, erzählen, berichten.
related, verwandt.
relative, der Verwandte (*adj. infl.*).
release, befreien.
religion, die Religion′, —, –en.
religious, religiös′.
remain, bleiben* (ſein); (in letter ending), verbleiben* (ſein).
remember, ſich erinnern.
remind, erinnern.
remove, entfernen, weg=ſchaffen.
renew, erneuern.
rent, mieten; (= let), vermieten.
repeat, wiederholen.
reply, antworten, erwidern.
represent, dar=ſtellen.
representative, der Vertreter, –s, —.
reproach, vor=werfen*; — one with something, einem etwas vorwerfen.
reputation, der Ruf, –(e)s, –e.
request, die Bitte, —, –n.
request, bitten.*
require, verlangen, erfordern.
required, (of studies), vorgeſchrieben.
rescue, retten, befreien.
reserve, (of army), die Reſer′ve, —, –n.
reserve, reſervie′ren.
reside, wohnen.
residence, die Wohnung, —, –en.
resident, der Bewohner, –s, —; der Einwohner, –s, —.
resound, erſchallen* (ſein), klingen.*
respect, die Hinſicht, —, –en; in — to, in Hinſicht auf (*with acc.*).
respectfully, hochachtungsvoll.
respectively, beziehungsweiſe, (bzw.); on the Elbe and Weser —, an der Elbe, bzw. an der Weſer.
respond, antworten.
rest, der Reſt, –(e)s, –e; the — of the baggage, das übrige Gepäck.
rest, ruhen, (ſich) aus=ruhen.
restaurant, das Reſtaurant′, –s, –s.
restore, wieder her=ſtellen; wieder erſetzen.
result, das Ergebnis, –ſſes, –ſſe; der Erfolg, –(e)s, –e.
retain, behalten,* bewahren.
return, zurück=kehren (ſein); zurück-

kommen* (sein); by — mail, umgehend.
return ticket, die Rückfahrkarte, —, -n.
reverent, andächtig.
Reynard, (der) Reineke, -s.
Rhine, der Rhein, -(e)s.
rich, reich.
riddle, das Rätsel, -s, —.
ride, die Fahrt, —, -en.
ride, reiten* (sein); (in conveyance), fahren* (sein); — on ahead, voraus-reiten.*
right, das Recht, -(e)s, -e; on the —, rechts, zur Rechten; be in the —, recht haben.
right, *adj.*, richtig; he is —, er hat recht.
rigging, das Takelwerk, -(e)s.
ring, der Ring, -(e)s, -e.
ring, läuten; — the (door) bell, klingeln; a (little) bell —s, es klingelt; a (large) bell —s, es läutet.
rise, (of land), die Anhöhe, —, -n.
rise, steigen* (sein); (= get up), auf-stehen* (sein), sich (er)heben*; (of sun), auf-gehen* (sein); (of rivers), entspringen* (sein); — up (= project), empor-ragen.
rival, der Mitbewerber, -s, —.
river, der Fluß, -sses, ¨sse.
roar, das Brausen, -s; keep one in a — (of laughter), einen nicht aus dem Lachen kommen* lassen.*
roast-beef, der Rinderbraten, -s, —.
roast-pork, der Schweinebraten, -s, —.
robber, der Räuber, -s, —.
rock, schaukeln.
roll, das Brötchen, -s, —.
roll, rollen (sein *or* haben); of ship, rollen, schaukeln.
roller, die Rolle, —, -n.
Roman, römisch.
romance, der Roman', -(e)s, -e.
roof, das Dach, -(e)s, ¨er.
room, der Raum, -(e)s, ¨e; das Zimmer, -s, —; die Stube, —, -n; (of student), die Bude, —, -n; —-to-rent card, der Miets-zettel, -s, —.
rope, das Seil, -(e)s, -e; (on ship), das Tau, -(e)s, -e.
rose, die Rose, —, -n.
rose-garden, der Rosengarten, -s, ¨.
rough, rauh; (of sea), bewegt; it is —, die See geht hoch.
round, rund.
rouse, auf-wecken, erwecken.
rout, in die Flucht schlagen.*
royal, königlich.
Rudelsburg (castle), die Rudelsburg, —.
rugged, schroff, wild.
rule, die Regel, —, -n; as a —, in der Regel.
ruler, der Herrscher, -s, —.
run, laufen* (sein), fließen* (sein). (of a story), lauten; — around, herum-laufen*; — away, weg- (*or* fort) laufen*; — down, hinunterlaufen*; — in, herein-laufen*; — out, heraus-laufen.*
rush, (= run), (sich) stürzen (auf); (of storm), dahin-sausen (sein).
Russia, das Rußland, —s.

S

sacred, heilig.
sad, traurig.
sadness, das Trauern, -s; die Traurigkeit, —.
safe, *adj.*, sicher.

sail, segeln; (of steamers), fahren*
sailor, der Matroſe, -n, -n. [(ſein).
salad, der Salat', -(e)s, -e.
salary, das Gehalt, -(e)s, ¨er.
saloon, der Salon', -s, -s.
salt, das Salz, -es, -e.
salt, *adj.*, ſalzig. [ſelbe.
same (= like), gleich; the —, der=
sandwich, das belegte (Butter)brot, -(e)s, -e; das belegte Brötchen, -s, —.
satchel, die Reiſetaſche, —, -n.
satirical, ſati'riſch.
satisfactory, befriedigend.
satisfied, zufrieden.
saunter, ſchlendern (ſein); — down, entlang= (*or* herunter=)ſchlendern (ſein).
sausage, die Wurſt, —, ¨e; das Würſtchen, -s, —.
save, retten.
Saxony, das Sachſen, -s.
say, ſagen; it is said to be . . ., es ſoll . . . ſein.
Scandinavian, ſkandinaviſch.
scarcely, kaum.
scarf, die Schärpe, —, -n.
scene, die Scene, —, -n.
scenery, die Landſchaft, —, -en.
schedule, der Stundenplan, -(e)s, ¨e; (of railroad), der Fahrplan.
schedule-like, fahrplanmäßig.
scholar, der Schüler, -s, —; (= learned man), der Gelehrte (*adj. infl.*).
school, die Schule, —, -n; — building, das Schulgebäude, -s, —; — room, das Schulzimmer, -s, —; — time, die Schulzeit, —, -en.
science (natural), die Naturwiſſenſchaft, —, -en.
scientific, wiſſenſchaftlich.
scratch, kratzen, ſcharren.
sea, die See, —, -(e)n; das Meer, -(e)s, -e.
seasick, ſeekrank.
search, die Suche, —; in — of, auf der Suche nach.
seat, der Sitz, -es, -e; (in theatre, etc.), der Platz, -es, ¨e.
seat, ſetzen.
second, zweit; — hand, antiqua'riſch; — largest, zweitgrößt.
secondary (of schools), ſekundär'.
secretary, der Schriftwart, -(e)s, -e; der Sekretär' -(e)s, -e.
secure, ſicher.
see, ſehen.*
seek, ſuchen; — after, ſuchen.
seem, ſcheinen.*
seldom, ſelten.
select, aus=wählen.
sell, verkaufen.
semester, das Semeſter, -s, —.
send, ſenden,* ſchicken; — for, ſenden (*or* ſchicken) nach); — greetings (regards), grüßen laſſen.*
separate, trennen.
September, der September, -(s).
series, die Reihe, —, -n.
seriousness, der Ernſt, -es.
serpent, die Schlange, —, -n.
servant, der Diener, -s, —; (in hotel), der Hausknecht, -(e)s, -e.
serve, dienen (*dat.*); — his year (in army), ſein Jahr abdienen.
service, der Dienſt, -es, -e; be at the — of, zu Dienſten ſtehen (*dat. of pers.*)
servitude, die Knechtſchaft, —.
session, die Sitzung, —, -en.
set, ſetzen; — about something, ſich

an etwas machen, an-fangen*; — free, befreien; — out, auf-brechen* (sein); sich auf den Weg machen.

seven, sieben.

seventeenth, siebzehnt.

several, einige, mehrere.

severe, schwer, streng.

sew, nähen.

sexta (lowest class in gymnasium), die Sexta, —.

shake, beben; — each other's hands, sich die Hand (*or* Hände) schütteln.

shall, sollen.

shape, die Gestalt, —, -en; die Form, —, -en.

shapeless, formlos.

sharp, scharf; (= strict), streng.

shed, vergießen*; (of light), verbreiten.

shed, der Schuppen, -s, —.

sheep, das Schaf, -(e)s, -e.

shepherd, der Hirt, -en, -en; der Schäfer, -s, —.

shield, der Schild, -(e)s, -e.

shine, scheinen*; — out, heraus-leuchten.

ship, das Schiff, -(e)s, -e; —'s doctor, der Schiffsarzt, -(e)s, ¨-e.

shirt, das Hemd, -(e)s, -en.

shoe, der Schuh, -(e)s, -e; (of horses), das Hufeisen, -s, —.

shoe (of horses), beschlagen.* [—.

shoemaker, der Schuhmacher, -s,

shop, der Laden, -s, ¨-.

shore, das Ufer, -s, —; on —, am Ufer, am Lande.

short, kurz.

shout, rufen*; — to one, einem zurufen.*

show, zeigen; (= prove), erweisen,* beweisen*; — in, herein-führen.

shrewd, schlau, klug.

shriek, schreien,* heulen.

shrill, gellend.

shut, schließen*; — off, ab-schließen,* verengen.

side, die Seite, —, -n; — by —, neben einander.

sight (= view), der Anblick, -(e)s, e; in —, in Sicht; catch — of, erblicken.

sign, das Zeichen, -s, —; (= notice), die Aufschrift, —, -en; (= placard), der Zettel, -s, —.

signal, das Signal', -(e)s, -e; das Zeichen, -s, —; — for departure, das Abschiedssignal.

silence, die Stille, —, -n.

silent, still.

silk, — hat, der Zylin'der, -s, —.

silken, seiden.

silver, das Silber, -s.

silvery, silbern.

similar, ähnlich.

simple, einfach, schlicht.

since, *prep.*, seit (*dat.*); *conj.*, seit, seitdem; (because), da.

sincere, aufrichtig.

sing, singen.*

single, einzeln; — trip ticket, die einfache Fahrkarte, —, -n.

sink, sinken* (sein), versinken* (sein).

Sir, (der) Herr, -n, -en; (in address), mein Herr!

sister, die Schwester, —, -n.

sit, sitzen*; — down, sich (hin-)setzen.

six, sechs.

sixteenth, sechzehnt.

sixty, sechzig.

skate, Schlittschuh laufen* (sein *or* haben).

skating, das Schlittschuhlaufen, -s.

skating-rink, die Eisbahn, —, –en.
skill, die Kunstfertigkeit, —; die Geschicklichkeit.
skilled (skilful), geschickt.
sky, der Himmel, –s, —.
"sky-scraper," der Wolkenkratzer, –s, —.
slate, der Schiefer, –s.
slay, erschlagen.*
sleep, schlafen*; go to —, ein-schlafen* (sein); it is good —ing, es schläft sich gut.
sleeping-car (sleeper), der Schlafwagen, –s, —.
sleeping-potion, der Schlaftrank, –(e)s, ¨e.
slice, —d cold meat, der kalte Aufschnitt, –(e)s, –e.
slight, klein, gering.
slow, langsam.
slumber, schlummern.
sly, schlau, verschmitzt.
small, klein.
smartly, — dressed, schmuck (gekleidet).
smile, lächeln; force a —, ein Lächeln erzwingen.*
smite, schlagen,* schlagen* auf (*acc.*).
smoke, rauchen.
smoke-stack, der Schornstein, –(e)s, –e.
smooth, glatt.
so, *adv.*, so; *conj.*, so, also, und so, deshalb; — that, so daß, damit; an hour or —, etwa eine Stunde; —-called, sogenannt.
sob, schluchzen.
social, sozial'.
society, die Gesellschaft, —, –en.
soft, weich.
soldier, der Soldat', –en, –en.
solemn, feierlich.
solo, das Solo, –s, –s *or* Soli.
solve, lösen.
some, etwas, ein wenig; (*plur.*), einige; — one, (irgend) jemand, (irgend) einer; — other time, ein anderes Mal.
somebody, (irgend) jemand.
something, etwas.
sometime, einmal; —s, manchmal.
somewhat, etwas, ziemlich.
somewhere, irgendwo.
son, der Sohn, –(e)s, ¨e.
song, das Lied, –(e)s, –er; der Gesang, –(e)s, ¨e.
soon, bald; as — as, sobald; no —er than, kaum . . . so.
sorry, traurig; I am —, es tut mir leid, ich bedaure.
sort, all —s of, allerlei.
soul, die Seele, —, –n.
sound (= thorough), tüchtig, gründlich.
sound, fullness of —, die Tonfülle, [—.
sound, tönen, klingen.*
soup, die Suppe, —, –n.
source, die Quelle, —, –n.
south, der Süden, –s; — Germany, das Süddeutschland, –s.
southeast, der Südosten, –s.
southern, südlich.
southward, südwärts.
southwest, der Südwesten, –s.
southwestern, südwestlich.
speak, sprechen*; — to, sprechen* (*acc. of pers.*). (= address), anreden.
speaker, der Redner, –s, —.
spear, der Speer, –(e)s, –e.
special, besonder; — train, der Sonderzug, –(e)s, ¨e.

specialist, der Spezialiſt', –en, –en.
specialize, etwas als Hauptfach betreiben,* ſpezialiſie'ren.
specialty, die Spezialität', —, –en; das Hauptfach, –(e)s, ¨er.
species, die Art, —, –en.
spectacle, das Schauſpiel, –(e)s, –e.
speech (= address), die Rede, —, –n.
spend, aus=geben*; (of time), ver= (*or* zu=)bringen.*
spire, die Turmſpitze, —, –n.
spirit, der Geiſt, –(e)s, –er.
splendid, prächtig, prachtvoll.
splendor, die Pracht, —; love of —, die Prachtliebe, —.
split, ſpalten.
spokesman, der Wortführer, –s, —; act as —, das Wort führen.
spoon, der Löffel, –s, —.
spot, der Fleck, –(e)s, –e.
spring, ſpringen* (ſein *and* haben), — up, hinauf=ſpringen* (ſein).
spring (of water), die Quelle, —, –n; (season), der Frühling, –(e)s, –e.
sq. kil. (**square kilometer**), Qkm., das Quadrat'kilome'ter, –s, —.
square, der Platz, –es, ¨e; Augustus Square, der Auguſtusplatz, –es.
square, *adj.*, quadra'tiſch.
St. (**Street**), = Str. (die Straße, —, –n).
St. Thomas's, die Thomaskirche, —.
stable, der Stall, –(e)s, ¨e.
stagger, — forwards, hervor=taumeln (ſein).
stair, flight of —s, die Treppe, —, –n; —climbing, das Treppenſteigen, –s.
stand, ſtehen,* (= endure), ertragen,* aus=halten*; — for, vertreten.*
stanza, die Strophe, —, –n.
start (of train, etc.), ab=fahren* (ſein); — off (out), auf=brechen* (ſein), ſich auf den Weg machen; — up, in die Höhe ſchnellen (*or* fahren).
state, der Staat, –(e)s, –en; — examination, das Staatsexamen, –s, –ina.
stately, ſtattlich.
station, die Station', —, –en; (= building), der Bahnhof, –(e)s, ¨e.
station-master, der Bahnhofsvorſteher, –s, —.
statue, die Bildſäule, —, –n; die Statue, —, –n.
stay, bleiben* (ſein); ſich auf=halten*; (= lodge), logie'ren [g = *z in azure*]; — up, auf=bleiben.*
steam, der Dampf, –(e)s, ¨e.
steamer, der Dampfer, –s, —; das Dampfſchiff, –(e)s, –e.
steamship company, die Dampfſchiffsgeſellſchaft, —, –en; die Dampfſchiffahrtsgeſellſchaft, —, –en.
steep, ſteil.
step, der Schritt, –(e)s, –e; — in, ein=treten* (ſein); — into, eintreten in (*acc.*).
stick, — in, hinein=ſtecken.
still, *adj.*, ſtill, ruhig; *adv.*, noch.
stirrup, der Steigbügel, –s, —.
stitch, die Naht, —, ¨e.
stock, in —, vorrätig.
stocking, der Strumpf, –(e)s, ¨e.
stone, der Stein, –(e)s, –e; mill —, der Mühlſtein.

stop, an=halten*; (= cease), auf=hören.
story, die Geſchichte, —, –n; **fairy** —, das Märchen, –s, —; (of house), das Stockwerk, –(e)s, –e; der Stock, –(e)s, ¨e; das Geſchoß, –ſſes, –ſſe.
storm, der Sturm, –(e)s, ¨e.
stormy, ſtürmiſch.
stout, (= fat), dick.
stove, der Ofen, –s, ¨.
straight, gerade; — through, mitten durch.
straightway, ſogleich, gleich.
strain, der Ton, –(e)s, ¨e; die Weiſe, —, –n.
strange, fremd; (= peculiar), ſonderbar; (= other) ander.
stranger, der Fremde (*adj. infl.*).
straw, das Stroh, –(e)s; — roof, das Strohdach, –(e)s, ¨er.
stream, ſtrömen, fließen* (ſein).
street, die Straße, —, –n; narrow —, die Gaſſe, —, –n; — door, die Haustür, —, –en.
strength, die Stärke, —.
stretch, — one's self out, ſich ausſtrecken.
strict, ſtreng, ſcharf.
stride, der Schritt, –(e)s, –e.
strike, ſchlagen*; (= hit), treffen*; — up (a song), an=ſtimmen.
stroll, ſchlendern (ſein).
strong, ſtark, kräftig, gewaltig.
structure, der Bau, –(e)s, –ten *or* –e.
student, (in schools), der Schüler, –s, —; (at university), der Student', –en, –en; — card, die Studentenkarte, —, –n; — life, das Studentenleben, –s; — song, das Studentenlied, –(e)s, –er.
study, das Studium, –s, –ien; (= branch), das Fach, –(e)s, ¨er; (= room), die Studierſtube, —, –n.
study, ſtudie'ren; (in schools), lernen; (= work at), treiben*; (occupy oneself with), ſich mit etwas beſchäftigen; leſen.*
stupid, dumm.
sturdy, ſtark, kräftig.
subdued, gedämpft.
subject, der Gegenſtand, –(e)s, ¨e; das Thema, –s, —ta *or* Themen; (= branch), das Fach, –(e)s, ¨er.
subject, *adj.*, untertan.
sublime, erhaben.
submit, ſich unterwerfen*; (= hand in), vor=legen, ein=reichen.
subsequent, folgend.
subterranean, unterirdiſch.
suburb, die Vorſtadt, —, ¨e.
success, der Erfolg, –(e)s, –e.
successful, erfolgreich.
succumb, unterliegen* (ſein).
such, ſolch, ſo; — a one, ſo ein.
suddenly, plötzlich.
suffice, genügen.
sufficient, genug, genügend.
suffrage, das Stimmrecht, –(e)s; das Wahlrecht, –(e)s.
suit, be —ed for, paſſen.
sum, die Summe, —, –n.
summer, der Sommer, –s, —.
summon, fordern, auf=fordern.
sun, die Sonne, —, –n.
Sunday, der Sonntag, –(es), –e.
sunrise, der Sonnenaufgang, –(e)s, ¨e.
sunshine, der Sonnenſchein, –(e)s.
superhuman, übermenſchlich.
superior, (= higher), höher; (= bet-

ter), beſſer; — quality, der Vorzug, –(e)s, ¨e.
superstition, der Aberglaube, –ns.
supervision, die Aufſicht, —.
supper, das Abendbrot, –(e)s, –e.
support, ſtützen.
suppose, vermuten; I —, wohl.
supposed, vermeintlich, ſcheinbar.
supreme, — direction, die Oberleitung, —.
sure, ſicher, beſtimmt; to be —, zwar, freilich.
surpass, übertreffen.*
surrender, übergeben,* ſich ergeben.*
surround, umgeben.*
survey, betrachten.
suspicious, verdächtig.
swallow, — up, verſchlingen.*
swan, der Schwan, –(e)s, ¨e.
swear, ſchwören.*
sweep, fegen.
swift, ſchnell. [ben).
swim, ſchwimmen* (ſein *and* ha-
Switzerland, die Schweiz, —.
sword, das Schwert, –(e)s, –er; der Degen, –s, —.
sword-point, die Schwertſpitze, —, –n.
syllable, die Silbe, —, –n.
system, das Syſtem, –s, –e; fraternity —, das Verbindungsweſen, –s.

T

table, der Tiſch, –es, –e.
tail, der Schwanz, –es, ¨e.
take, nehmen*, ab-nehmen*; (= bring), bringen*; — a draught, einen Zug tun*; — a look at, anſehen*; — a trip, eine Reiſe machen; — along with one, mitnehmen*; — back, zurück-nehmen* (*or* bringen*); — down, niederſchreiben*; — notes, nach-ſchreiben*; — one's leave, ſich verabſchieden; — out, hinaus-bringen*; — place, ſtatt-finden*; — refuge, ſich flüchten; — the opportunity, die Gelegenheit wahr-nehmen*; — the place of, vertreten*; — through, führen durch; — time, Zeit fordern; — up, auf-nehmen*; — upon one's self, auf ſich nehmen.*
tale, die Geſchichte, —, –n; das Märchen, –s, —.
talent, die Gabe, —, –n; die Anlage, —, –n.
tall, hoch; (of people), groß.
task, die Arbeit, —, –en.
taste (*trans.*), koſten; (*intrans.*), ſchmecken.
tea, der Thee, –s.
teach, lehren.
teacher, der Lehrer, –s, —.
tear, reißen*; — asunder, zerreißen*; — something away from one, einem etwas entreißen.*
telescope, das Fernrohr, –(e)s, –e.
tell, ſagen; (relate), erzählen.
temple, — of the Grail, der Graltempel, –s, —.
ten, zehn.
tendency, die Neigung, —, –en; die Tendenz', —, –en.
tender, ſanft, zart.
tenth, zehnt.
term, der Ausdruck, –(e)s, ¨e.
territory, das Gebiet, –(e)s, –e.
test, prüfen, probie'ren.
testify, bezeugen.
Teuton, der (alte) Germane, –n, –n.
than, als.

thank, danken (*dat.*).
that, *dem. pron. and adj.*, der, dieſer, jener; *rel. pron.*, der, welcher; *conj.*, daß; at —, dazu.
the, der; — more . . . — better, je mehr . . . deſto beſſer.
theatre, das Thea'ter, -s, —.
then, dann.
theorem, der Lehrſatz, -es, ¨-e.
there, da, dort; in —, da drin; — is (are), es iſt (ſind), es gibt (*acc.*).
therefore, alſo, deswegen.
thereupon, darauf.
they, ſie, die.
thickness, die Dicke, —.
thing, das Ding, -(e)s, -e; die Sache, —, -n.
think, denken*; (= believe), glauben (*dat. of pers.*), (= deem *or* consider), halten* für.
thinker, der Denker.
third, das Drittel, -s, —; two —s, zwei Drittel.
third, *adj.*, dritt.
thirteen, dreizehn.
thirteenth, dreizehnt.
thirtieth, dreißigſt.
thirty, dreißig; the — Years' War, der dreißigjährige Krieg, (-es).
thirsty, durſtig.
this, dieſer, der; — evening, heute abend.
thither, dorthin.
thought, der Gedanke, -ns, -n; das Denken, -s.
thousand, das Tauſend, -(e)s, -e.
thousand, *adj.*, tauſend; a — times, tauſendmal.
thread, der Faden, -s, ¨; der Zwirn, -(e)s, -e.
threaten, drohen (*dat. of pers.*).
threateningly, drohend.
three, drei.
throng, das Gedränge, -s; die Menge, —, -n.
throng (= fill), erfüllen.
through, *prep.*, durch (*acc.*); *adv.*, durch; (= finished), fertig.
thrust, — into, hinein-ſtecken.
thunder! Donnerwetter!
Thüringer Hof, der Thüringer Hof, -(e)s.
Thuringian Forest, der Thüringer Wald, -(e)s.
Thursday, der Donnerstag, -(e)s, -e.
thus, ſo, alſo, auf dieſe Weiſe.
ticket, die Fahrkarte, —, -n.
tile, der Ziegel, -s, —.
till, *prep.*, bis; not —, erſt.
time, die Zeit, —, -en; a long —, lange; by the —, bis; by this —, nunmehr; for the first —, zum erſten Male.
time-table, der Fahrplan, -(e)s, ¨-e.
tinsel, der Flitter, -s, —.
tiny, klein, winzig.
tip, das Trinkgeld, -(e)s, -er.
tired, müde.
to, zu; (of places), nach (*dat.*), in, an, auf (*acc.*); (= as far as; up to), bis an, bis in, bis auf, bis zu, bis (*acc.*); in order —, um zu; *often translated by dat. without prep.*
toast, die Geſundheit, —, -en; der Toaſt, -es, -e.
to-day, heute.
together, zuſammen.
toll, läuten, ertönen.
to-morrow, morgen; — morning, morgen früh.

tone (of a company), die Stimmung, —, -en.
to-night, heute abend, heute nacht.
too, zu, allzu; (= also), auch.
tournament, das Turnier', -(e)s, -e.
toward(s), nach (*dat.*), gegen (*acc.*), auf (*acc.*) . . . zu.
tower, der Turm, -(e)s, ¨e.
town, die Stadt, —, ¨e; down — (into —), in die Stadt; —sman (*plur.* people), der Bürger, -s, —; der Städter, -s, —.
town-hall, das Rathaus, -er, ¨er.
toy(s), das Spielzeug, -(e)s (*collective noun in sing.*).
trade, der Handel, -s.
train, der Zug, -(e)s, ¨e.
train, erziehen.*
training, die Erziehung, —, -en.
tramp, die Fußreise, —, -n; die Fußwanderung, —, -en.
trample, — under foot, mit Füßen treten.*
trampling, das Trampeln, -s.
transportation, facility for —, das Verkehrsmittel, -s, —.
travel, reisen (sein); — on, weiter reisen.
traveler, der Reisende (*adj. infl.*).
traveling-blanket, die Reisedecke, —, -n.
traverse, durchlaufen,* durchschneiden.*
treacherous, verräterisch, heimtückisch.
treasure, der Schatz, -es, ¨e.
treasurer, der Schatzwart, -(e)s, -e; der Schatzmeister, -s, —.
treat, behandeln; (= relate), handeln von.
treaty, der Vertrag, -(e)s, ¨e.
tree, der Baum, -(e)s, ¨e.
tree-trunk, der Baumstamm, -(e)s, ¨e.
tremendous, ungeheuer.
trial, — year, das Probejahr, -(e)s, -e.
trim, schmuck, nett.
trip, die Reise, —, -n; — across, die Überfahrt, —, -en; — home, die Rückfahrt, —, -en.
trot, traben.
trouble, die Störung, —, -en; (= pains), die Mühe, —, -n.
trouble, — one's self about something, sich um etwas (be)kümmern.
trousers, die Hosen (*plur.*), *or* die Hose, — (*sing.*), die Beinkleider (*plur.*).
truly, wahrhaftig, wahrlich; yours — (in letters), Ihr ergebener.
trunk, der Koffer, -s, —.
trust, das Vertrauen, -s; — in God, Vertrauen in (*or* auf) Gott; Gottesvertrauen.
trustworthy, zuverlässig.
truth, die Wahrheit, —, -en.
try, versuchen. [-s, —.
tug (= boat), der Schleppdampfer,
turn, drehen, wenden*; — on (of steam), an-lassen*; — to (some one), sich wenden* an (*acc.*); — towards, sich zu-wenden* (*dat.*).
twelfth, zwölft.
twelve, zwölf.
twenty, zwanzig.
twenty-eighth, achtundzwanzigst.
twenty-one, einundzwanzig.
twenty-five, fünfundzwanzig.
twice, zweimal.
two, zwei, beide. [—, -n.
type-writer, die Schreibmaschine,

typical, typiſch.
Tyrolese, tiro'ler (*indecl.*).

U

unavoidable, unvermeidlich.
uncle, der Onkel, –s, —.
unclean, unſauber.
unconscious (= senseless), bewußtlos.
understand, verſtehen.*
undertake, unternehmen.*
undismayed, unverzagt.
undoubted, gewiß, unzweifelhaft.
unexpected, unerwartet, unverhofft.
uneven, ungleich.
unfortunate, unglücklich.
unfortunately, leider, unglücklicherweiſe.
ungrateful, undankbar.
unhindered, ungehindert.
unification, die Einigung, —, –en.
uniformity, die Gleichförmigkeit, —.
union, die Vereinigung, —, –en; (= league), der Bund, –(e)s, ¨e.
unite, vereinigen.
United States, die Vereinigten Staaten.
universal, allgemein.
University, die Univerſität, —, –en; (*in composition*), Univerſitäts-.
unjust, ungerecht.
unless, wenn nicht, es ſei denn daß.
unoccupied, frei.
unpack, aus-packen.
unsatisfactory, unbefriedigend.
unscrupulous, gewiſſenlos.
unsuccessful, erfolglos.
unsurpassed, unübertroffen.
until, bis, bis daß; not —, erſt.
untouched, unberührt.
unusual, ungewöhnlich, ſelten.
unwilling, ungern.
upon, auf (*dat. and acc.*); bei, zu (*dat*).
upper, ober; — story, der Oberſtock, –(e)s, –(e).
upstairs, oben; run —, die Treppe hinauf-laufen* (ſein).
use, der Gebrauch, –(e)s, ¨e; make good — of, aus-nützen.
use, *v.*, gebrauchen; ſich (eines Dinges) bedienen; He —d to play, Er pflegte zu ſpielen, Er ſpielte früher.
usher (in), (ein)führen in.
usual, gewöhnlich.
utter, äußern, aus-ſprechen.*

V

vacant, leer, frei.
vacate, become —d, frei werden.*
vain, eitel; in —, vergebens.
valid, triftig, ſtichhaltig.
valorous, tapfer.
valise (suit-case), der Handkoffer, –s, —; die Reiſetaſche, —, –n.
valley, das Tal, –(e)s, ¨er.
valor, die Tapferkeit, —; der Mut, –(e)s.
valorous, tapfer, kühn.
valued, wert, geſchätzt.
variety, die Abwechſ(e)lung, —, –en.
various, verſchieden.
vault, das Gewölbe, –s, —; — of the princes, die Fürſtengruft, —.
veal-cutlet, das Wienerſchnitzel, –s, —.
venture, wagen, ſich wagen.
very, ſehr; on the — first day, gleich am erſten Tage.
vessel (= receptacle), das Gefäß,

–es, –e; (= boat), das Schiff, –(e)s, – e.
vest, die Weſte, —, –n.
via, über (*acc.*).
victory, der Sieg, –(e)s, –e; monument of —, das Siegesdenkmal, –s, ¨er.
view (= opinion), die Anſicht, —, –en.
villa, die Villa, —, –len.
village, das Dorf, –(e)s, ¨er; — tree, der Dorfbaum, –(e)s, ¨e.
violent, heftig.
violin, die Violi'ne, —, –n; die Geige, —, –n.
visit, der Beſuch, –(e)s, –e.
visit, beſuchen.
Vistula, die Weichſel, —.
vote, der Beſchluß, –es, ¨e; die Abſtimmung, —, –en.

W

wagon, der Wagen, –s, —.
wait, warten; — over (a train), (einen Zug) überſchlagen.*
waiter, der Kellner, –s, —.
waiting-room, der Wartesaal, –(e)s, –ſäle; die Wartehalle, —, –n.
wake (*intr.*), wachen; — up, aufwachen (ſein); (*trans.*), wecken; — up, auf=wecken.
walk, der Gang, –(e)s, ¨e; der Spazier'gang.
walk, gehen* (ſein); ſpazie'ren (gehen).
wall (of house), die Mauer, —, –n; (of room), die Wand, —, ¨e; (= rampart), der Wall, –(e)s, ¨e.
walnut, die Walnuß, —, ¨e; die Nuß, —, ¨e.
war, der Krieg, –(e)s, –e.
warm, *adj.*, warm.
warm, *v.*, wärmen.
warrior, der Krieger, –s, —; der Degen, –s, —.
waste, die Wüſte, —, –n.
waste, verſchwenden.
watch, beobachten, auf=paſſen.
water, das Waſſer, –s, ¨; —mill, die Waſſermühle, —, –n.
watering-place, der Badeort, –(e)s, –e *or* ¨er.
wave, die Woge (*or* Welle), —, –n.
wave, (*intr.*), flattern; (*trans.*), ſchwenken.
way, der Weg, –(e)s, –e; (= manner), die Weiſe, —, –n; on the —, unterwegs; under —, im Gange.
weakness, die Schwäche, —, –n.
wealthy, wohlhabend.
weapon, die Waffe, —, –n.
wear, tragen.*
weather, das Wetter, –s, —.
wedge, der Keil, –(e)s, –e.
Wednesday, der Mittwoch, –(e)s, –e.
week, die Woche, —, –n.
weep, weinen; — for, beweinen.
weigh, wägen,* erwägen,* prüfen.
welcome, *adj.*, willkommen.
welcome, *v.*, bewillkommen.
weld, closely —ed, feſt gefügt.
well, der Brunnen, –s, —.
well, *adj.*, geſund, wohl; *adv.*, gut, wohl; *interj.*, nun; very —, ſchön; — kept, gutbeſtellt, wohlgepflegt; — trained, wohlgeſchult.
Weser, die Weſer, —.
west, der Weſten, –s; — boundary, die Weſtgrenze, —, –n.

western, weſtlich, Weſt=; — Germany, das Weſtdeutſchland, –s.
wet, naß; — through, durchnäßt.
wharf, der Landungsplatz, –es, ¨e.
what, was, welch; — a, was für ein; — kind of, was für ein.
wheel, das Rad, –(e)s, ¨er.
when, *adv.*, wann; *conj.*, als, wenn, wo, da; —ever, wenn.
whence, woher.
where, wo; —at (*or* —upon), worauf; —by, wobei.
whether, ob.
which, *interrog. pron.*, welcher; *rel. pron.*, der, welcher.
while, indem, während. [flüſtern.
whisper, flüſtern, — to us, uns zu=
whistle (= sound), der Pfiff, –(e)s, –e; das Tuten, -s; (= instrument), die Pfeife, —, –n; the — blows, es pfeift.
whistle, pfeifen.*
white, weiß.
whither, wohin.
who, (*inter.*) wer; (*rel.*) der, welcher.
whole, ganz; on the —, im ganzen.
why, warum, weshalb.
wicked, böſe, bösartig.
wide, breit, weit.
wife, die Frau, —, –en; die Gemahlin, —, –nen; my —, meine Frau; your —, Ihre Frau Gemahlin.
wild, wild.
will, wollen.*
willing, einverſtanden, bereit.
wind, der Wind, –(e)s, –e.
window, das Fenſter, –s, —.
wind-mill, die Windmühle, —, –n.
winding, krumm, gewunden.
wine, der Wein, –(e)s, –e.
wing, der Flügel, –s, —.
wink, blinzeln.
winter, der Winter, –s, —.
wisdom, die Weisheit, —.
wish, wünſchen, wollen.*
with, mit, bei (*dat.*).
withdraw (= leave), ab=ziehen* (ſein).
without, ohne (*acc.*).
witty, geiſtreich.
wolf, der Wolf, –(e)s, ¨e.
woman, die Frau, —, –en; das Weib, –(e)s, –er.
womanly (*or* **woman's**), weiblich.
wonder, das Wunder, –s, —.
wonderful, wunderbar, wundervoll.
wood, das Holz, –es, ¨er; (of house), das Fachwerk, –(e)s.
wooden, hölzern; — shoe, der Holzſchuhe, –(e)s, –e.
word, das Wort, –(e)s, ¨er *and* (connected words), –e.
work, die Arbeit, —, –en; das Werk, –(e)s, –e.
work, *v.*, arbeiten.
world, die Welt, —, –en; — famed, weltbekannt; — power, die Weltmacht, —, ¨e.
worse, so much the —, um ſo ſchlimmer.
worst, *v.*, beſiegen, überwältigen.
worship, house of —, das Gotteshaus, –es, ¨er. [Pfg.
worth, wert; 60 pfg. — of, für 60
worthy, würdig, bieder.
wound, verletzen, beleidigen.
wrath, der Zorn, –(e)s.
wreath, der Kranz, –es, ¨e.
write, ſchreiben*; (= compose), verfaſſen.

written, ſchriftlich.
writing, das Schreiben, –s; die Abfaſſung, —, –en.
Württemberg, das Württemberg, –(e)s.
Würzburger, (= beer brewed in Würzburg), Würzburger.

Y

yard, der Hof, –(e)s, ¨e.
year, das Jahr, –(e)s, –e.
yes, ja.
yesterday, geſtern; only —, erſt geſtern.
yet, *adv.*, noch; *conj.*, doch, dennoch, aber; as —, bis jetzt; not —, noch nicht.
you, du, ihr, Sie.
your, dein, euer, Ihr.
yours, der deinige (*or* Ihrige, *or* eurige).
yourself, dich, euch, ſich.
young, jung; — man, der junge Mann, –(e)s, ¨er; — men, junge Leute.
youth, die Jugend, —; (= young man), der Jüngling, –(e)s, –e.

Z

Zugspitze, die Zugſpitze, ¨–.

LIST OF STRONG AND IRREGULAR VERBS

WHICH APPEAR IN THIS BOOK

This reference list purposes only to give the forms of the verbs.

The meanings of the verbs and their compounds are given in the vocabularies, where words found in this list are marked with an asterisk (*).

Compounds are given only in cases where the uncompounded verb is not in use or is weak.

The 2d and 3d person singular of the present indicative and the 2d person singular of the imperative are given whenever they are irregular; a dash (——) indicates that they are regular.

Infinitive	Present 2d, 3d person	Imperative	Preterit Indicative	Preterit Subjunctive	Past Participle
befehlen	befiehlſt, befiehlt	befiehl	**befahl**	befähle beföhle	**befohlen**
beginnen	——	——	**begann**	begänne begönne	**begonnen**
bergen	birgſt, birgt	birg (berge)	**barg**	bärge bürge	**geborgen**
bieten	——	——	**bot**	böte	**geboten**
binden	——	——	**band**	bände	**gebunden**
bitten	——	——	**bat**	bäte	**gebeten**
bleiben	——	——	**blieb**	bliebe	**geblieben**
brechen	brichſt, bricht	brich	**brach**	bräche	**gebrochen**
brennen	——	——	**brannte**	brennte	**gebrannt**
bringen	——	——	**brachte**	brächte	**gebracht**
denken	——	——	**dachte**	dächte	**gedacht**
dringen	——	——	**drang**	dränge	**gedrungen**
dürfen	darfſt, darf	*wanting*	**durfte**	dürfte	**gedurft**
erwägen	——	——	**erwog**	erwöge	**erwogen**
eſſen	iſſeſt, ißt ißt	iß	**aß**	äße	**gegeſſen**
fahren	fährſt, fährt	——	**fuhr**	führe	**gefahren**
fallen	fällſt, fällt	——	**fiel**	fiele	**gefallen**
fangen	fängſt, fängt	——	**fing**	finge	**gefangen**
fechten	fichtſt, ficht	ficht	**focht**	föchte	**gefochten**
finden	——	——	**fand**	fände	**gefunden**

Infinitive	Present 2d, 3d person	Imperative	Preterit Indicative	Preterit Subjunctive	Past Participle
flechten	flichtſt, flicht	flicht	**flocht**	flöchte	**geflochten**
fliehen	——	——	**floh**	flöhe	**geflohen**
fließen	——	——	**floß**	flöſſe	**gefloſſen**
freſſen	friſſeſt, friſſt frißt	friß	**fraß**	fräße	**gefreſſen**
frieren	——	——	**fror**	fröre	**gefroren**
gebären	gebierſt, gebiert	gebier	**gebar**	gebäre	**geboren**
geben	gibſt, gibt	gib	**gab**	gäbe	**gegeben**
gehen	——	——	**ging**	ginge	**gegangen**
gelten	giltſt, gilt	gilt	**galt**	gälte gölte	**gegolten**
genießen	——	——	**genoß**	genöſſe	**genoſſen**
geſchehen	—, geſchieht	*wanting*	**geſchah**	geſchähe	**geſchehen**
gewinnen	——	——	**gewann**	gewänne gewönne	**gewonnen**
gießen	——	——	**goß**	göſſe	**gegoſſen**
gleichen	——	——	**glich**	gliche	**geglichen**
graben	gräbſt, gräbt	——	**grub**	grübe	**gegraben**
greifen	——	——	**griff**	griffe	**gegriffen**
halten	hältſt, hält	——	**hielt**	hielte	**gehalten**
hangen	hängſt, hängt	——	**hing**	hinge	**gehangen**
hauen	——	——	**hieb**	hiebe	**gehauen**
heben	——	——	**hob**	höbe hübe	**gehoben**
heißen	heißeſt, heißt heißt	——	**hieß**	hieße	**geheißen**
helfen	hilfſt, hilft	hilf	**half**	hälfe hülfe	**geholfen**
kennen	——	——	**kannte**	kennte	**gekannt**
klingen	——	——	**klang**	klänge	**geklungen**
kommen	——	——	**kam**	käme	**gekommen**
können	kannſt, kann	*wanting*	**konnte**	könnte	**gekonnt**
kriechen	——	——	**kroch**	kröche	**gekrochen**
laden	läbſt, läbt	——	**lud**	lüde	**geladen**
laſſen	läſſeſt, läßt läßt	——	**ließ**	ließe	**gelaſſen**
laufen	läufſt, läuft	——	**lief**	liefe	**gelaufen**
leihen	——	——	**lieh**	liehe	**geliehen**
leſen	lie(ſe)ſt, lieſt	lies	**las**	läſe	**geleſen**
liegen	——	——	**lag**	läge	**gelegen**
mahlen	——	——	**mahlte**	mahlte	**gemahlen**

Infinitive	Present 2d, 3d person	Imperative	Preterit Indicative	Preterit Subjunctive	Past Participle
mögen	magſt, mag	*wanting*	**mochte**	möchte	**gemocht**
müſſen	mußt, muß	*wanting*	**mußte**	müßte	**gemußt**
nehmen	nimmſt, nimmt	nimm	**nahm**	nähme	**genommen**
nennen	——	——	**nannte**	nennte	**genannt**
pfeifen	——	——	**pfiff**	pfiffe	**gepfiffen**
pflegen*	——	——	**pflog**	pflöge	**gepflogen**
raten	rätſt, rät	——	**riet**	riete	**geraten**
reißen	reißeſt, reißt reißt	——	**riß**	riſſe	**geriſſen**
reiten	——	——	**ritt**	ritte	**geritten**
rufen	——	——	**rief**	riefe	**gerufen**
ſchaffen	——	——	**ſchuf**	ſchüfe	**geſchaffen**
ſchallen	——	——	**ſcholl**	ſchölle	**geſchollen**
ſcheiden	——	——	**ſchied**	ſchiede	**geſchieden**
ſcheinen	——	——	**ſchien**	ſchiene	**geſchienen**
ſchlafen	ſchläfſt, ſchläft	——	**ſchlief**	ſchliefe	**geſchlafen**
ſchlagen	ſchlägſt, ſchlägt	——	**ſchlug**	ſchlüge	**geſchlagen**
ſchließen	——	——	**ſchloß**	ſchlöſſe	**geſchloſſen**
ſchlingen	——	——	**ſchlang**	ſchlänge	**geſchlungen**
ſchneiden	——	——	**ſchnitt**	ſchnitte	**geſchnitten**
ſchreiben	——	——	**ſchrieb**	ſchriebe	**geſchrieben**
ſchreien	——	——	**ſchrie**	ſchriee	**geſchrieen**
ſchreiten	——	——	**ſchritt**	ſchritte	**geſchritten**
ſchwimmen	——	——	**ſchwamm**	ſchwämme ſchwömme	**geſchwommen**
ſchwinden	——	——	**ſchwand**	ſchwände	**geſchwunden**
ſchwören	——	——	**ſchwor**	ſchwöre ſchwüre	**geſchworen**
ſehen	ſiehſt, ſieht	ſieh	**ſah**	ſähe	**geſehen**
ſein	biſt, iſt	ſei	**war**	wäre	**geweſen**
ſenden†	——	——	**ſandte**	ſendete	**geſandt**
ſingen	——	——	**ſang**	ſänge	**geſungen**
ſinken	——	——	**ſank**	ſänke	**geſunken**
ſinnen	——	——	**ſann**	ſänne	**geſonnen**
ſitzen	——	——	**ſaß**	ſäße	**geſeſſen**
ſollen	——	*wanting*	**ſollte**	ſollte	**geſollt**
ſprechen	ſprichſt, ſpricht	ſprich	**ſprach**	ſpräche	**geſprochen**
ſpringen	——	——	**ſprang**	ſpränge	**geſprungen**

* Usually weak. † Also regular weak verb.

Infinitive	Present 2d, 3d person	Imperative	Preterit Indicative	Preterit Subjunctive	Past Participle
ſtehen	——	——	**ſtand**	ſtände ſtünde	**geſtanden**
ſteigen	——	——	**ſtieg**	ſtiege	**geſtiegen**
ſterben	ſtirbſt, ſtirbt	ſtirb	**ſtarb**	ſtürbe	**geſtorben**
ſtoßen	ſtößeſt, ſtößt ſtößt	——	**ſtieß**	ſtieße	**geſtoßen**
tragen	trägſt, trägt	——	**trug**	trüge	**getragen**
treffen	trifſt, trifft	triff	**traf**	träfe	**getroffen**
treiben	——	——	**trieb**	triebe	**getrieben**
treten	trittſt, tritt	tritt	**trat**	träte	**getreten**
trinken	——	——	**trank**	tränke	**getrunken**
tun	tuſt, tut	——	**tat**	täte	**getan**
vergeſſen	vergiſſeſt, vergißt vergißt	vergiß	**vergaß**	vergäße	**vergeſſen**
verlieren	——	——	**verlor**	verlöre	**verloren**
verzeihen	——	——	**verzieh**	verziehe	**verziehen**
wägen	——	——	**wog**	wöge	**gewogen**
weiſen	——	——	**wies**	wieſe	**gewieſen**
wenden*	——	——	**wandte**	wendete	**gewandt**
werben	wirbſt, wirbt	wirb	**warb**	wärbe würbe	**geworben**
werden	wirſt, wird	——	**ward wurde**	würde	**geworden**
werfen	wirfſt, wirft	wirf	**warf**	würfe	**geworfen**
winden	windeſt, windet	——	**wand**	wände	**gewunden**
wiſſen	weißt, weiß	——	**wußte**	wüßte	**gewußt**
wollen	willſt, will	——	**wollte**	wollte	**gewollt**
zeihen	——	——	**zieh**	ziehe	**geziehen**
ziehen	——	——	**zog**	zöge	**gezogen**
zwingen	——	——	**zwang**	zwänge	**gezwungen**

* Also regular weak verb.

Lad.Gr.
P8264g
225600
Author Pope, Paul R.
Title German composition. Ed.2.rev.
DATE.
NAME OF BORROWER.
University of Toronto
Library
DO NOT
REMOVE
THE
CARD
FROM
THIS
POCKET
Acme Library Card Pocket
Under Pat. "Ref. Index File"
Made by LIBRARY BUREAU